Mareo a Setswana a popegopuo mo NWU: tlhaolo le tlhaloso

TS Kwaga

orcid.org/0000-0003-2790-6032

Dissertation accepted in fulfilment of the requirements for the degree *Master of Arts in Setswana* at the North-West University

Supervisor: Prof RS Pretorius
Co-supervisor: Dr AS Berg

Graduation: June 2025

MAIKANO

Nna, **Thato Shaun Kwaga**, ke a ikana gore patlisiso eno ya dikerii ya M.A (Setswana), e bong **Mareo a Setswana a popegopuo mo NWU: tlhaolo le tlhaloso**, ga e ise e ke e neelwe yunibesithi e, kgotsa nngwe fela go tlhatlhobelwa dikerii epe. Ke tiro ya me ka thulaganyo le ka phethagatso ya yona, mme metswedi yotlhe e e dirisitsweng mo go yona, e ikaegile ka fa tshwanelong.

Thato Shaun Kwaga Ngwanaitseele 2024

KABELO

Patlisiso e, e abelwa baithuti ba Lefapha la Setswana mo NWU, mme e tla aga motheo wa dithuto tsa popegopuo ya Setswana. Ba losika la me le Batswana ka bophara, thuto e ke e abela le lona, itse thutapuo ya Setswana mme o tla itse Setswana jaaka o ikitse!

DITEBOGO

Ke rata go neela ditebogo tsa me go ba ba latelang:

- Go mofatlhosi wa me, moporofesa RS Pretorius, tshegetso ya gago, tlhotlheletso le thotloetso go dirile gore dithuto tsa me di nne bonolo, ditshwaelo tsa gago le maele di mphile maatla a go phethagatsa patlisiso e ya me. O nnile le seabe se segolo mo dithutong tsa me, go tloga mo dithutong tse potlana. O nnile motsadi, motlhatlheledi, motsamaisi le morotloetsi, ke a go leboga rra. Modimo a re segofaletse wena mo lefapheng le la Setswana mo NWU Potchefstroom.

- Go mofatlhosi wa me, ngaka AS Berg, ke leboga tshegetso ya gago, ke leboge matsapa a o a tsereng go nthusa go kwala patlisiso e ka mokgwa wa segompieno. O nnile le seabe mo dithutong tsa me. Ke lebogela nako ya gago le matsapa a o a tsereng go nthusa mo patlisisong e. Modimo a nne le wena ngaka!

- Go batsadi ba me, rre Sydney Raymond Kwaga, ke leboga tlhotlheletso le kemonokeng ya gago, o ntshegeditse, o ntlhotlheleditse e bile o mphile maatla a go dira ka thata. Go mme wa me Makhosazana Reginah Chauke, ke go lebogela gore o nnile mme yo o nthatileng, yo o ntlhotlheleditseng ka metlha go fitlha ka letsatsi la gago la bofelo mo lefatsheng, robala ka kgotso!

- Go Mmalesedi, ke lebogela kemonokeng ya gago, tlhotlheletso ya gago le tshegetso, ntleng ga tshegetso ya gago tiro e, ka bo e sa nna motlhofo. Ke a go leboga mma!

- Go Lefapha la Setswana, ke lebogela tiro e le e dirileng go godisa puo e ya rona, go ngaka EE Pooe ke lebogela matsapa a gago, le thuso ya gago mo diphetolelong tsa mareo. Ke leboge moporofesa DS Matjila ka thuso ya gago ya dintlha tsa puo (ka bolekanytsi), Modimo a le tshegofatse batsadi!

- Go badirammogo Omphemetse Maleka le Kevin Mavalela le Mme Phakedi ke lebogela thuso ya lona mo thutong e, le nthusitse ka pelo e ntle. Masego le matlhogonolo!

- Go ba Grow our own timber (GOOT) le Department of Sports Arts and Culture (DSAC) ke lebogela tshegetso ya lona ka matlole, ka lona ke kgonne go diragatsa tiro e.

Ditebogo dikgolo go Rara Ramasedi, Modimo le badimo ba me!

TSHOBOKANYO

Patlisiso eno e ikana ka go tlhaloganngwa ga mareo a thutapuo mo Setswaneng, ka setlhogo sa yona e le Mareo a Setswana a popegopuo mo NWU: tlhaolo le tlhaloso.

Mo dithutong tsa thutapuo ya dipuo tsa Setho, go na le go tlhaela go le gontsi ga mareo, mme dithanodi tse di phasaladitsweng di ikaegile ka mareo a tlwaelegileng a puo ya ka metlha, e seng a thutapuo. Mo go ithuteng thutapuo go botlhokwa go tlhaloganya mareo jaaka e le motheo wa go itse puo. Mo puong ya Setswana ga go na thanodi e e phasaladitsweng, e totile mareo a thutapuo. Ka jalo, go na le go tlhaela ga ditlhaloso tsa mareo a thutapuo.

Mareo mangwe a thutapuo a tshwana le fa a kaya dilo tse di farologaneng, mme se se tlhola ketsaetsego mo baithuting. Thuto e, e tlhotlheleditswe ke go lemoga fa baithuti ba Yunivesithi ya Bokone-Bophirima ba nna le bothata go tlhaloganya se se rutiwang mo thutapuong ka ntlha ya go sa tlhaloganye mareo. Dithuto tse di phasaladitsweng di lebeletse mareo, di phasaladitswe ka Seesimane. Ka jalo, Thanodi ya mareo a thutapuo ya ga Louwrens (1994) ya Sepedi e phasaladitswe go neela ditlhaloso tsa mareo a thutapuo, fela e kwadilwe ka Seesimane.

Patlisiso e, e tla lebelela mareo a thutapuo a a dirisitsweng go ruta popegopuo ya Setswana mo NWU, go leka go a tsweletsa pele le ditlhaloso tsa ona, le go fokotsa ketsaetsego ka go a tlhalosa ka bongwe ka bongwe ka dikao tse di maleba. Mosola wa patlisiso e ke go tsweletsa mareo a thutapuo le ditlhaloso tsa ona gore a tlhaloganngwe ke baithuti ba Setswana ba SETM 111 - SETM 321.

Mareo a dikonokono: Setswana, mareo a popegopuo ya Setswana, thutamedumopuo, diphetogomedumo, popafoko le popapolelo.

ABSTRACT

This investigation will be based on the understanding of the linguistic terms in Setswana, hence the dissertation is titled: Mareo a Setswana a popegopuo mo NWU: tlhaolo le tlhaloso

In linguistic studies on Bantu languages, there is a marked lack of terminologies. Even the published dictionaries are focused on basic language terms, not on linguistic terms. When learning the linguistics of a language, it is important to understand terms, as they are the basis and starting point of knowing a language. There is no linguistic dictionary that is published focusing on the Setswana language. Therefore, there is a lack of description of terms regarding linguistics.

There are some linguistic terms that are the same. However, they have different meanings, which causes confusion to the students, as there is a lack of description of those terms. This study is influenced by the struggle of students at North-West University in understanding the content being taught because of a lack of terminology description. Many sources that focus on terminology are published in English, the only source that is significant in terminology is published by Louwrens (1994), focusing on the description of grammatical terminology of Northern Sotho, however it is also written in English.

This study will focus on the linguistic terms used in the teaching and learning of Setswana grammar at NWU. By describing the terms with relevant examples, we aim to better understand them and eliminate confusion. The purpose of this investigation is to improve the linguistic terms and their description so that they are understood by Setswana students studying SETM 111 – SETM 321.

Key terms: Setswana, Setswana grammatical terms, phonetics, phonology, morphology and syntax

LENANEO LA DIKHUTSHWAFATSO

NWU North-West University (Abbreviation)

sk. sekao

jj. jalojalo

lb leba/lebelela

§ Section/karolo

LENANEO LA DITLHALOSO

K1, K2, K3	Kemo 1, Kemo 2, Kemo 3
Kutu	Kutu
Kykm	Kopulatifi ya Kamanyi
Kytsh	Kopulatifi ya Tshwantshanyo
Ldrkp	Lediri la Kopulatifi
Lebts	Lebotsi
Ledtrs	Legokanyitirisi
Legf	Legokanyi la felo
Legkn	Legokanyikamano
Legpts	Legokanyipotso
Legrui	Legokanyirui
Legtlh	Legokanyi Tlhaodi
Legtsh	Legokanyitshwantshanyo
Leitr	Leitiri
Lekp	Lekopanyi
Lgkny	Legokanyi
Lkhth	Lekgethi
Lmdlr	Leemedi la Lerui
Lmdt	Leemeditota
Lmdth	Leemeditho
Lnlts	Leinaletswa
Lrgnyi	Learoganyi
Lrltf	Legokanyi la relatifi
Lsp	Lesupi
Lthsled	Lethusalediri
Ltlhd	Letlhaodi
Ltlhlbts	Letlhophilebotsi
Ltlhls	Letlhalosi
Ltlhltlh	Letlhophiletlhotlholodi
Ltlhpak	Letlhophileakaretsi
Lts	Leetsi
Mgf	Mogatla wa felo
Mgldrlts	Mogatla LediriLetswa

Mgny	Mogatla wa Nyenyefatso
MgtlLed	Mogatlana wa Lediri
Mgtlwln	Mogatlana wa Leina
Mgtrd	Mogatla wa Tiredi
Mgtrg	Mogatla wa Tiregi
Mgtrs	Mogatla wa Tirisi
Mgtrw	Mogatla wa Tirwa
Mgwldl	Mogatla wa Lediriletswa
Mgwll	Mogatla wa Leinaletswa
Modi	Modi
ModilLl	Modi wa Letlhaodi
Mtlhmaak	Matlhophimaakaretsi
Pybnts	Popi ya bontsi
Pyf	Popi ya Felo
Pykg	Popi ya Kganetso
Pykgn	Popi ya kgonegi
PyMt	Popi ya mokgwatiro
Pypj	Popi ya Pakajaanong
Pyptl	Popi ya Pakatlang
Pytrld	Popi ya Tirolodi
Pytsw	Popi ya Tsweledi
StlhLn 1, 2, 3, ... 20	Setlhopha sa Leina 1,2,3…20
Tatlhel	Lelatlhelwa
Thyrui	Thuanyirui
Thysdr	Thuanyisediri
Thysdrw	Thuanyisedirwa
Tlhymdg	Tlhogo ya Modirisogo

LENAANE LA DITENG

MAIKANO ..... **I**

KABELO ..... **II**

DITEBOGO ..... **III**

TSHOBOKANYO ..... **IV**

ABSTRACT ..... **V**

LENANEO LA DIKHUTSHWAFATSO ..... **VI**

LENANEO LA DITLHALOSO ..... **VII**

KGAOLO 1 MATSENOMAGOLO **1**

1.1 Matseno **1**

1.2 Tlhagiso ya setlhotlhomiswa **2**

1.3 Dipotso tsa patlisiso **4**

1.4 Maitlhomo **4**

1.5 Mmeo wa patlisiso **5**

1.6 Botlhokwa jwa patlisiso **5**

1.7 Karologanyo ya dikgaolo **6**

KGAOLO 2 TSHEKATSHEKO YA DIPHASALATSWA **8**

2.1 Matseno **8**

2.2 Tlhalosokgolo ya popegopuo ya Setswana **8**

2.3 DiKWALO tse di dirisetswang go ithuta Setswana **10**

2.3.1 Sekolo se sepotlana le se segolwane 10

2.3.2 Dikaedi tsa go ruta Setswana mo NWU 13

2.4 Diphasalatso mo makaleng a thutapuo ya Setswana 14

2.4.1 Popafoko 14

2.4.2 Thutamedumopuo le Diphetogomedumo 15

2.4.3 Popapolelo 16

2.5 Diphasalatso tsa Mareo a Thutapuo 17

2.6 Konosetso 17

KGAOLO 3 MAREO A THUTAMEDUMOPUO LE DIPHETOGOMEDUMO 19

3.1 Matseno 19

3.2 Thutamedumopuo ke eng? 19

3.3 Dirwe tsa puo 20

3.3.1 Dipounama 21

3.3.2 Meno 21

3.3.3 Marinini 22

3.3.4 Magalapa 22

3.3.5 Loleme 22

3.3.6 Setswalo sa kgokgotso 23

3.3.7 Menapekodu 23

3.3.8 Kgokgotso 23

3.3.9 Makgwafo 23

3.3.10 Kgapa ya nko 24

3.4 Mefuta ya medumopuo 24

3.4.1 Ditumammogo 24

3.4.1.1 Diponagalo tsa ditumammogo 25

3.4.1.2 Mafelo a tumiso a ditumanosi 28

3.4.1.3 Bolengtumiso jwa ditumammogo 29

3.4.1.4 Tshobokanyo ya diponagalo tsa ditumammogo 32

3.4.2 Ditumanosi 33

3.4.2.1 Papetlana ya ditumanosi 34

3.4.2.2 Bolengtumiso jwa ditumanosi 34

3.5 Diphetogomedumo ke eng? 36

3.5.1 Tshwaetsano 37

3.5.2 Kgalapatso 38

3.5.3 Kemofatso 38

3.5.4 Tengwafatso 40

3.5.5 Rinifatso 40

3.5.6 Poufatso 41

3.5.7 Kgwasafatso 41

3.5.8 Tshwaetsano ya ditumanosi 42

3.5.9 Tlogelo ya ditumanosi 42

3.6 Konosetso 43

KGAOLO 4 MAREO A POPAFOKO 44

4.1 Matseno 44

4.1.1 Popafoko ke eng? 45

4.2 Popi ke eng? 45

4.2.1 Mefuta ya dipopi 46
4.2.1.1 Modi 46
4.2.1.2 Setlhongwa 48
4.2.1.3 Tlhogo 49
4.2.1.4 Mogatla 49
4.2.1.5 Kutu 52
4.2.1.5.2 Leadingwa/Lethopiwa 53
4.3 Popo ya mafoko 54
4.3.1 Katoloso 54
4.3.2 Mafokomatswa 54
4.3.2.1 Lediriletswa 55
4.3.2.2 Leinaletswa 55
4.3.3 Tswakanyo 57
4.3.3.1 Leinatswako 58
4.3.3.2 Poeletso 59
4.4 Dikarolopuo tsa Setswana / MEFUTA YA MAFOKO 59
4.4.1 Leina 61
4.4.1.1 Ditlhopha tsa maina le ditlhogo tsa tsona 61
4.4.1.2 Mefuta ya maina 62
4.4.1.3 Letlhaodi 62
4.4.2 Leemedi 63
4.4.2.1 Mefuta ya Maemedi 64

4.4.2.1.2 Leemeditota 64
4.4.2.1.3 Lesupi 64
4.4.2.1.4 Letlhophi 65
4.4.2.1.5 Leemedirui/Leemedithuo 66
4.4.3 Lediri 66
4.4.3.1 Dikarolwana tsa madiri 67
4.4.3.2 Modiriso 78
4.4.3.3 Mokgwatiro 79
4.4.3.4 Paka 79
4.4.3.5 Phapaano 81
4.4.4 Letlhalosi 82
4.4.5 Legokanyi 83
4.4.5.1 Legokanyitlhaodi 83
4.4.5.2 Legokanyirui 83
4.4.5.3 Legokanyitirisi 84
4.4.5.4 Legokanyifelo 84
4.4.5.5 Legokanyikamano 85
4.4.5.6 Legokanyitshwantsho 85
4.4.5.7 Legokanyipotso 85
4.4.6 Lekopanyi 85
4.4.7 Leetsi 86
4.4.8 Lelatlhelwa/Tatlhelwa 87

4.5 Konosetso 87

KGAOLO 5 MAREO A POPAPOLELO 88

5.1 Matseno 88

5.2 Popapolelo ke eng? 88

5.3 Mafoko a Setswana 89

5.3.1 Mefuta ya mafoko 89

5.3.1.1 Leina 90

5.3.1.2 Leemedi 90

5.3.1.3 Lediri 91

5.3.1.4 Legokanyi 97

5.3.1.5 Lekopanyi 97

5.3.1.6 Letlhalosi 98

5.3.1.7 Lelatlhelwa 98

5.3.1.8 Leetsi 98

5.4 Tiriso ya mafoko 99

5.4.1 Sediri 99

5.4.1.1 Sediri sa popegopuo 100

5.4.1.2 Sediri sa bokao 100

5.4.2 Sedirwa 100

5.4.2.1 Sedirwatebang 101

5.4.2.2 Sedirwathoko 101

5.4.3 Letlhaolwa 102

5.4.4 Tlhaodi 102
5.4.5 Tlhalosi 102
5.4.6 Letiro 103
5.4.7 Letlapele 103
5.4.8 Letlaleletsi 104
5.5 Ditlhopha tsa mafoko 104
5.5.1 Setlhopha sa leina 105
5.5.2 Setlhopha sa leemedi 105
5.5.3 Setlhopha sa lediri 106
5.5.4 Setlhopha sa legokanyi 106
5.5.5 Setlhopha sa lekopanyi 106
5.6 Dikapolelwana 106
5.6.1 Sekapolelwana-leina 107
5.6.2 Sekapolelwana-leemedi 108
5.6.3 Sekapolelwana-lediri 108
5.6.4 Sekapolelwana-legokanyi 109
5.6.5 Sekapolelwana-letlhalosi 109
5.6.6 Sekapolelwana-tatlhelwa 109
5.6.7 Sekapolelwana-leetsi 109
5.7 Polelo 110
5.7.1 Polelonolo 111
5.7.2 Polelopate 111

5.7.3 Polelotswako 113

5.8 Konosetso 114

KGAOLO 6 KONOSETSO: DIPHITLHELELO LE SEABE 115

6.1 Matseno 115

6.2 Diphitlhelelo 115

6.3 Seabe sa patlisiso 117

6.4 Tiro ya isago 117

ANNEXURE A: TLALELETSO YA MAREO/MAFOKO A A DIRISITSWENG A THUTAPUO LE DILEKANI TSA ONA TSA SEESIMANE 118

METSWEDI 123

TATELANO YA MANANEO

Lenaneo 1-1	Mareo a Setswana	3
Lenaneo 3-1	Karata ya ditumammogo	27
Lenaneo 3-2	kgalapatso	38
Lenaneo 3-3	Kemofatso	39
Lenaneo 3-4	Tengwafatso	40
Lenaneo 3-5	Tengwafatso	40
Lenaneo 3-6	Rinifatso	41
Lenaneo 3-7	Poufatso	41
Lenaneo 4-1	Ponagalo ya ditlhongwa mo lefokong	48
Lenaneo 4-2	Ponagalo ya megatla ya leina mo leineng	51
Lenaneo 4-3	Popego ya madirimatswa	55
Lenaneo 4-4	Mefuta ya mafoko/dikarolopuo tsa Setswana	60
Lenaneo 4-5	Ditlhophaina le popego ya maina	62
Lenaneo 4-6	Mefuta ya matlhaodi	63
Lenaneo 4-7	Maemeditho	64
Lenaneo 4-8	Kemo ya masupi	65
Lenaneo 4-9	Mefuta ya matlhophi	65
Lenaneo 4-10	Popego ya dipopi mo madiritoteng	70
Lenaneo 4-11	Mefuta ya matlhalosi	82
Lenaneo 4-12	Mefuta ya maetsi	86
Lenaneo 4-13	Mefuta ya malatlhelwa	87
Lenaneo 5-1	Mediriso ya Setswana	92

LENAANE LA DITHALO

Sethalo 3-1	Dirwe tsa puo	22
Sethalo 3-2	Karata ya ditumanosi	35
Sethalo 3-3	Tikologo ya tumiso ya ditumanosi	36
Sethalo 4-1	Makala a thutapuo	47
Sethalo 4-2	Dikarolwana tsa madiri	73

KGAOLO 1 MATSENOMAGOLO

1.1 MATSENO

Setswana ke nngwe ya dipuo tsa semmuso tsa Aforika Borwa e bile ke puo ya semmuso ya bosetšhaba kwa Botswana. Maitlhomomagolo a Yunibesithi ya Bokone-Bophirima (NWU)[1] ke go tlhabolola le go godisa Setswana le Sesotho jaaka dipuo tsa tlhaeletsano, kamano le tsa dithuto (Language Policy of the NWU, 2022). Go nnile le phisegelo e ntšhwa ya go itemosa, go ithuta (intellectualise) le go ithuta gape (*re-intellectualise*) dipuo tsa Seaforika mo Aforika Borwa (Khumalo 2023). Matsapa a, a etleeditswe ke go ruta le go ithuta Setswana mo NWU. Thuto e, e lebagane le mareo a a amegang mo dithutong tsa popegopuo ya Setswana mo NWU.

Maikaelelo a thuto e, ke go sekaseka mareo a a leng teng mo dithutong tsa popegopuo ya Setswana mo Yunivesithi ya Bokone-Bophirima le go leka go tlhabolola mareo ao gore a tlhaloganyege mo baithuting. Mareo a popegopuo a bonala a le bofitlha, mme ga a tlhaloganyege bonolo mo baithuting ba Yunivesithi ya Bokone-Bophirima. Patlisiso e, e tla lebana le mareo a a dirisiwang go ruta le go ithuta Setswana mo NWU. Mareo a, a tla tlhalosiwa ka botlalo a be a neelwa le dikao tse di maleba. Tiriso ya metswedi ya Setswana le ya dipuo tsa Sesotho e tla dirisiwa mo go tlhaloseng mareo a popegopuo a a sa utlwaleng. Mareo a a seng teng mo Setswaneng fela a le teng mo Seesimaneng, a tla bopiwa go ya ka melawana ya popegopuo gore a nne teng mo Setswaneng.

Diphasalatswa tsa ditlhalosokgolo tsa popafoko, thutamedumopuo le diphetogomedumo, le popapolelo mo Setswaneng di mmalwa, ka jalo di santse di tlhaela. Kosch (1991) o neelana ka tlhaloso ya dipaka tsa thutapuo tse nne, tse di tlhagisang tshimologo le tsweletso ya popegopuo mo dipuong tsa Setho[2] go simolola ka 1876 go fitlha ka 1991. Mo dipakeng tse go na le paka ya lekgorokgoro, paka ya tiriso kgotsa Doikean, paka ya popego kgotsa ya Van Wyk le paka ya segompieno. Moyane (1995:6-10) o neelana ka tlhaloso ya lemorago la ditlhalosokgolo tsa popegopuo ya Setswana go ya dipaka tsa thutapuo tse di tlhagisitsweng ke Wilkes (1978). Mo pakeng ya lekgorokgoro, dithanodi (*lexicographies*) tsa ga Lichtenstein, Campbell le Burchell di phasaladitswe go simolola ka 1812 go fitlha ka 1824. Ga go na diphasalatso tsa ga Archbell, Casalis, Livingstone, Fredoux, Crisp, kgotsa Wookey tse di kwadilweng go simolola ka 1901 go fitlha ka 1905 tsa dintlha tsa popegopuo ya Setswana tse di kwadilweng ka Setswana. Fela dipuo

[1] North-West University
[2] Bantu languages, Sintu/Setho languages

tsa kwa moseja ke tsone tse di neng di dirisiwa jaaka motheo go neela ditlhaloso tsa thutapuo ya dipuo tsa bantsho mo pakeng eo. Cole (1955:xxiii-xxviii) o kaya fa molebo o o neng o dirisiwa ke thutapuo ya dipuo tsa kwa moseja, o dirisitswe mo tirong ya gagwe. Mo pakeng ya tiriso, Sandilands (1953) le Cole (1955) ba phasaladitse ditiro tsa bone mo popegopuong ya Setswana ka Seesimane. Mo pakeng ya popego, ga go na dikwalo tse di tlhalosang popegopuo ya Setswana tse di phasaladitsweng. Diphasalatso tse dingwe tsa botlhokwa tse di phasaladitsweng mo pakeng ya segompieno ke tsa boMogapi (1981), Lesele (1987), Ntsime (1993), Malao (1987) le Setshedi (1980). Tsona bogolo di lebane le dikolo tse dikgolwane, mme tlhaloso ya popegopuo ya Setswana e kwadilwe ka Setswana. Setshedi (1980) o dirisitswe thata mo dithutong tsa Setswana tsa popegopuo kwa diyunivesithing.

Buka e, e kwadilweng ka Seesimane, e e phasaladitsweng ke Department of African Languages and Literature, University of Botswana (2000), e neela ditlhalosokgolo tsa popapolelo ya Setswana go ya ka melao ya thutapuo. Diphasalatswa tsa sešweng, di akaretsa tlhaloso e e tlhomameng ya letlhomeso la popafoko ya dikarolopuo tsa Setswana le la tlhaloso ya popapolelo ya mafoko a Setswana go dirisiwa molebo wa bolebapopego mo dibukeng tse pedi, Krüger (2013a le 2013b).

Le fa Lombard *et al*. (1985), Louwrens (1991), Poulos le Louwrens (1994), Louwrens *et al*. (1995) le Kosch (2006), e le metswedi ya Sepedi (Sesotho sa Leboa, Northern Sotho), ke metswedi e e maleba go neela tlhalosokgolo ya popegopuo ya Setswana gonne di bua ka tlhalosokgolo ya popegopuo ya dipuo tsa Sesotho.[3]

Mefuta ya metswedi ya dipatlisiso e e amanang le dikarolo dingwe tsa thutapuo ya Setswana e tlhabetswe ke letsatsi go tloga ka bo1950. Metswedi e, e akaretsa diathikile le dithuto tsa basenadikerii mme ga go na tse di kwadilweng ka Setswana.[4]

1.2 TLHAGISO YA SETLHOTLHOMISWA

Popegopuo e kaela tlhalosokgolo e e tlhomameng ya puo, Louwrens (1994:71-73; Kosch, (1991:3). Go tlhaloganya mareo a popegopuo go botlhokwa mo go ithuteng le mo go ruteng popegopuo ya Setswana jaaka NWU e ikaegile ka boteng le tiriso e e lolameng ya mareo a a maleba. Mareo a, a tshwanelwa ke go akaretswa mo tlhalosong le mo tshekatshekong ya mareo

[3] Dipuo tsa Sesotho di akaretsa Setswana, Sepedi (Northern Sotho, Sesotho sa Leboa) le Sesotho (Southern Sotho). Dipuo tsa Sesotho di bidiwa gape ka la Sotho-Tswana) language group.
[4] Lenaneo le le feletseng le tla anelwa ka botlalo mo kgaolong ya bobedi.

a thutapuo ya Setswana go akaretsa le popafoko ya Setswana, thutamedumopuo le diphetogomedumo, le popapolelo tse di rutiwang.

Dikaedi tse di dirisiwang go ruta puogae ya (dimmojulo tsa SETM) mo NWU di kwadilwe ka Setswana (Theledi le Phakedi, 2019, Theledi *et al*, 2018, 2019, Tsheole le Phakedi, 2015, Phakedi le Tsheole, 2018, Phakedi, 2019). Mareo a a mo dikaeding tse go tlhalosa mareo a popegopuo a tlhaela, mme a santse a tlhoka go tlhalosiwa ka tsenelelo gore a tlhaloganyege, e bile a ntse a tlhoka go tlhalosiwa go ya kwa pele. Mareo a a tlhaelang ditlhaloso tse di maleba a tshwanetswe go bopiwa le go tlhalosiwa ka botlalo.

Mareo mangwe a a santseng a tlhoka go tlhabololwa ke a:

Word class		**Functional class**	
English	**Setswana**	**English**	**Setswana**
Adjective	Letlhaodi	Qualificative	Tlhaodi
Adverb	Letlhalosi	Descriptive (Adjunct)	Letlhalosi
Word classes	Dikarolopuo	Functional	Dikarolopuo

Lenaneo 1-1: Mareo a Setswana

Kosch (2006:5-9) o bone medi le ditlhongwa (*roots and affixes*) e le dipopi tse e leng motheo wa lefoko, fa Krüger (2006:29-30) ene a bone medi le dipopi tsa popegopuo (*roots and grammatical morphemes*). Lereo 'root' mo Setswaneng ke modi, fa lereo 'morpheme' e le popi. Ga go na lereo le le kaelang 'affix' mo Setswaneng kwa ntle le gore lereo la popi le dirisitswe teng. Lereo la 'grammatical morpheme' le lone ga le utlwale fa le isiwa mo Setswaneng, ka e le 'popi ya thutapuo' (*morpheme of linguistics*) fa le fetoletswe. Mo thutong ya diphetogomedumo lereo kemofatso, thatafatso le nkofatso di bonala fa di tlhola ketsaetsego mo ditlhalosokgolo tsa tsona. Bakwadi bangwe jaaka Setshedi le Malope (1978) ba tlhalosa fa kemofatso le thatafatso di kaya selo se le sengwe. Kemofatso ke '*sound stops'* fa thatafatso e le '*sound strengthning/hardning'*. Se se supa fa mareo a Setswana a tlhoka go bopiwa go ya pele gore go nne le diphetolelo le ditlhaloso tsa ona.

Fa dipopi di neelwa mareo a tsone go ya ka manno a tsone mo moding (*prefixes, suffixes, verbal endings*), ditlhaelo tse di latelang di lemogilwe. Lereo 'tlhogo' le dirisiwa jaaka tlhogo ya leina, mme nako nngwe jaaka tlhogo ya lediri. Lereo 'setlhongwa' (sengwe se se tsentsweng/se se tlhomilweng) le dirisiwa jaaka mogatla wa madiri, lereo 'mogatla' le dirisiwa jaaka setlhongwa sa bofelo mo mabakeng mangwe. Lereo 'mogatlana' (*small tail – diminutive of mogatla*) le dirisiwa go kaela ditlhongwa tsa madiri a a bidiwang (*verbal terminative/ending*). Mareo a Setswana a (*inflection le derivation*) ga a ise a tlhangwe gore a tlhaloganyege, lereo katoloso le lebeletse

‘*inflection*’ mme lereo -go tswa le ka dirisiwa go kaya ‘*derivation*’, mme ga a utlwale e bile ga a tlhaloganyege go le kalo mo Setswaneng. Pharologano magareng ga modi le kutu e tlhola ketsaetsego mo baithuting, fela jaaka e ne e tlhola ketsaetsego mo bakwading ba segologolo.

Go a bonala gore mo dithutong tsa Setswana go na le go sa tlhomamang kgotsa go na le dikopakopano ka ga ditlhaloso tsa mareo a mo dithutong tsa popegopuo ya Setswana. Botlhokwa jwa thuto e, e tla nna go sekaseka le go tlhalosa mareo a thutapuo ya Setswana a a tlhagelelang mo dikaeding tsa Setswana mo NWU, le go leka go a tlhabolola gore a tlhaloganyege mo baithuting ba Setswana.

1.3 DIPOTSO TSA PATLISISO

Bothata bo bogolo ba patlisiso bo akaretsa tlhalosokgolo le boteng jwa mareo a a dirisiwang mo go ruteng popegopuo ya Setswana mo dithutong tsa bosenadikerii mo NWU.

Ka jalo patlisiso e, e tla araba dipotso tse go fitlhelela maikaelelo a a latelang:

- A mareo a Setswana a go ruta popegopuo, popafoko, thutamedumopuo le diphetogomedumo le popapolelo a tlhalosiwa go utlwala?
- Ke mareo afe a a sa tlhalosiweng go utlwala mo dithutong tsa Setswana tsa thutapuo?
- Ke mareo afe a thutapuo ya Setswana a a tshwanetsweng go bopiwa go ya pele le go tlhalosiwa gore a tlhaloganyesege?

1.4 MAITLHOMO

Maitlhomomagolo a thuto e ke go tlhatlhoba mareo a a leng teng a mo dithutong tsa popegopuo ya Setswana mo NWU, le go leka go tlhabolola mareo le ditlhaloso tsa ona fa go tlhokega, go akaretsa le go bopa mareo a a tlhaelang le ditlhaloso tsa one.

Maitlhomomagolo a thuto e ke:

- go kwala lenaane la mareo a a leng teng, a a bonwang mo dikaeding tsa dithuto tsa Setswana tsa SETM mo NWU
- go sekaseka mareo a a leng teng le go tlhola gore a a dirisiwa ka nepagalo
- go tlhalosa mareo a a mo dithutong tsa Setswana tsa SETM ka dikao tse di maleba
- go bopa le go tlhalosa mareo a mašwa ka dikao tse di maleba tsa Setswana

1.5 MMEO WA PATLISISO

Thuto e latela molebo wa Hermeneutic. Molebo o, ke molebo o o lebelelang le go sekaseka diphasalatswa tse di phasaladitsweng, mme o dirise diphasalatswa tseo go fitlhelela maitlhomo a patlisiso e e rileng. Patlisiso eno e dirisa molebo o, ka go dirisa tshedimosetso ya metswedi ya seakademi go neela ditlhalosokgolo tsa mareo a go ruta popegopuo ya Setswana

Mareo a tla tlhatlhojwa go supa go sa lekaneng le go sa tlhaloganyegeng ga ona. Se, se tla dirwa ka go kwala mareo otlhe a a tlhagelelang mo dikaeding tsa SETM 111-321 tsa dithuto tsa Setswana mo NWU. Mareo a, a tla sekasekiwa ka go netefatsa bonnete jwa one. Mareo a a sa tlhaloganyegeng ka botlalo a tla tlhalosiwa go ya ka tshedimosetso go tswa mo diphasalatsong tsa metswedi e mengwe ya thutapuo. Thanodi ya mareo a popegopuo a Sepedi e e kwadilweng ke Louwrens (1994), e tla dirisiwa ka tsenelelo. Ditlhaloso tsa Louwrens (1994) di neetswe ka Seesimane mme mareo a a nepagetseng a Sepedi a neetswe.

Mareo a maŝwa a Setswana a tla tlhamiwa mo boemong jwa mareo a a seng teng. Mareo a maŝwa a tla tlhalosiwa ka dikao, mme a tla tlhalosiwa fa tlase ka makala a farologaneng a thutapuo. Dikgaolo tse di tla aroganngwa ka makala a le mararo a thutapuo mme mareo a a welang ka fa tlase ga makala a a rileng a tla tlhalosiwa. Mareo a, a tla tlhagelela ka Setswana le Seesimane go tloga mo kgaolong ya boraro. Se se tla tlhagisa tekatekano ya mareo go tswa mo Seesimaneng go ya mo Setswaneng.

Go itemosa (*localisation*) le go ithuta gape (*re-intellectualisation*) Setswana jaaka go kailwe kwa tshimologong, ke moneelo o o botlhokwa wa thuto e. Ka jalo, thuto e, e tla nna teng ka puo ya Setswana gore e nne le seabe mo tsweletsong ya dithuto tsa Setswana. Diteng di tla kwalwa ka Setswana ka e le mo go sone mo go itemogelwang bothata jwa mareo a thutapuo, a a tlhokang tsweletso.

1.6 BOTLHOKWA JWA PATLISISO

Lereo ke karolo ya botlhokwa fa go ithutiwa puo nngwe le nngwe. Fa go tlhaloganngwa lereo le le rileng, go bonolo go tlhaloganya se se ithutiwang. Diphasalatso tsa dithanodi di simolotse kwa ga Lowe ka ntlha ya go ruta batho ditlhaloso tse di rileng tse di tlholwang ke go nna teng ga mareo. Go bonolo gore mareo a tlhakatlhakanngwe mme a tlhole ketsaetsego. Mareo a thutapuo a botlhokwa jaaka e le motheo wa go itse popegopuo ya puo e e rileng.

Botlhokwa jwa thuto e ke go neela ditlhalosokgolo tsa mareo a thutapuo ya Setswana, ka e le mareo a a tlholang ketsaetsego mo dithutong tsa Setswana. Mareo a Seesimane a mantsi e bile a tlhaloganyega, fela mo dipuong tsa bantsho jaaka Setswana gantsi re dirisa lereo le le lengwe

go tlhalosa mabaka a a farologaneng. Patlisiso e, e tla sekaseka le go neela ditlhalosokgolo tsa mareo a thutapuo ya Setswana, e be e nopola mareo a maswa fa go tlhokega. Patlisiso e e tla nna le seabe mo dithutong tsa thutapuo ya Setswana mo NWU, mme e tla fokotsa ketsaetsego e e tlhodilweng ke go tlhakatlhakana le go sa tlhaloganyege ga mareo.

1.7 KAROLOGANYO YA DIKGAOLO

Patlisiso e, e tla kgaogangwa ka dikgaolo go ya ka tatelano e e rileng. Morago ga matsenomagolo le tshekatsheko ya diphasalatswa, dikgaolo di tla aroganngwa go ya ka makala a thutapuo. Se se tla thusa gore mareo a tlhalosiwe go ya ka makala a thutapuo.

Patlisiso e, e rulagantswe ka tsela e e latelang:

Kgaolo ya 1: Matsenomagolo

Kgaolo e e anela ka matseno a patlisiso, mooko wa patlisiso le lemorago la diphasalatswa tsa thutapuo mo Setswaneng. Bothata jo bo tlhotseng tlhotlheletso ya patlisiso bo a neelwa, dipotso tsa patlisiso, mmeo le moralo wa patlisiso, maikaelelo a patlisiso le botlhokwa jwa patlisiso.

Kgaolo ya 2: Tshekatsheko ya diphasalatswa

Kgaolo e, e neela tshedimosetso ka diphasalatswa kgotsa diphasalatswa tse di nnileng teng tsa thutapuo ya Setswana. Tlhalosokgolo ya popegopuo ya Setswana e a begiwa, e supa diphasalatswa tse di phasaladitsweng mo dipakeng tsa thutapuo ya Setswana. Kgaolo e, e neela diphasalatswa tsa popegopuo tse di leng teng mo dithutong tsa Setswana kwa dikolong tse dipotlana le tse dikgolo. Kanelo e, e boripana ya didiriswa kgotsa dikaedi tsa Setswana mo NWU e a neelwa. Kgaolo e, e digela ka go bega diphasalatswa tse di bonweng mo thutapuong ya Setswana

Kgaolo ya 3: Mareo a thutamedumopuo le diphetogomedumo

Kgaolo e, e tlaa sekaseka mareo a thutapuo, a a welang mo lekaleng la thutamedumopuo le diphetogomedumo. Mareo a a tla tlhalosiwa ka botlalo mme a neelwa dikao tse di maleba gore a tlhaloganyege. Go tla simololwa ka ditlhaloso tsa thutamedumopuo mme ya salwa morago ke ditlhaloso tsa diphetogomedumo.

Kgaolo ya 4: Mareo a popafoko ya Setswana

Kgaolo e, e tla neela tlhalosokgolo e e feletseng ya mareo a a welang mo lekaleng la popafoko. E akaretsa mareo a dipopi, popo ya mafoko le dikarolopuo. Mareo a, a tlhalositswe ka botlalo ka dikao tse di maleba tsa Setswana.

Kgaolo ya 5: Mareo a popapolelo ya Setswana

Kgaolo e e tla sekaseka mareo a a welang mo lekaleng la popafoko, mme e tla neela mareo a mašwa fa go tlhokega. Mareo a, a tlile go neelwa ditlhalosokgolo le dikao tse di maleba tsa Setswana.

Kgaolo ya 6: Konosetso

Kgaolo e e tla supa maitlhomo a patlisiso go tswa mo setlhotlhomisweng. Kgaolo e e tla tlhagisa diphitlhelelo tsa patlisiso go tswa mo kgaolong nngwe le nngwe, mme ya bontsha gore patlisiso e, e nnile le seabe sefe mo dithutong kana mo lefapheng la Setswana ka kakaretso. Mo bofelong go tla tlhagisiwa tiro e e ka diriwang go tswa mo patlisisong e.

KGAOLO 2 TSHEKATSHEKO YA DIPHASALATSWA

2.1 MATSENO

Maikaelelomagolo a patlisiso e ke go sekaseka mareo a Setswana a a leng mo dithutong tsa Setswana tsa popegopuo mo Yunivesithi ya Bokone-Bophirima. Kgaolo e, e tla lebelela dithuto tse di phasaladitsweng tse di tsamaelanang le maikaelelo a patlisiso e. Patlisiso e, e tla lebelela kgolo ya thuto tsa popegopuo mo Setswaneng, diphasalatso tse di phasaladitsweng di lebeletse makala a thutapuo (popafoko, diphetogomodumo le thutamedumopuo, le popapolelo) e bo e feleletsa ka dithuto tse di phasaladitsweng tsa mareo a thutapuo.

2.2 TLHALOSOKGOLO YA POPEGOPUO YA SETSWANA

Kgolo ya popegopuo mo dipuong tsa Setho go tloga ka 1876-1991 e tlhalositswe ke Kosch (1991) a lebeletse Sepedi[5]. Mo thutong ya gagwe Kosch (1991) o lebelela dipaka tse dikwalo tsa popegopuo di phasaladitsweng ka tsone, a akaretsa paka ya lekgorokgoro, paka ya tiriso [6], paka ya popego le paka ya segompieno. Mo ditlhalosong tsa gagwe tsa dipaka jaaka e le dipaka tsa diphasalatso tsa thutapuo, go bonagala kgolo mo dithutong tsa thutapuo ya Sesotho le ya Setswana jaaka e le nngwe ya tsone. Morago ga phasalatso ya Kosch (1991), go nnile le phasalatso ya Moyane (1995) e e tlhagisang lemorago la diphasalatso tsa popegopuo jaaka Kosch (1991) fela yone e ne e lebeletse diphasalatso tse di tlhageletseng mo Setswaneng. Thuto ya ga Moyane (1995) e ne e lebeletse dikwalo tse di phasaladitsweng tsa popegopuo, tse di dirisiwang mo dikolong.

Moyane (1995:1-5) o tlhagisa lemorago la dithuto tsa popegopuo tsa dipuo tsa Setho. O tlhagisa tshekatsheko ya ga Kosch (1991) ya tlhaloso ya thutapuo ya Sepedi mme a lebeletse thata mo tlhalosong ya thutapuo ya Setswana, Moyane (1995:5-7). O latela Kosch (1991) ka go rulaganya tlhaloso ya thutapuo go ya ka dipaka tsa popegopuo tse di kailweng ke Wilkes (1978). Dipaka tse tsa popegopuo ke paka ya lekgorokgoro (*traditional period*), paka ya tiriso (*functional period*), paka ya popego (*structural period*), le paka ya segompieno (*modern period*).

Mo pakeng ya lekgorokgoro (1826-1905), thutapuo ya dipuo tsa kwa moseja e ne e dirisiwa jaaka motheo wa go lebelela kgotsa go ithuta thutapuo ya dipuo tsa Setho. Dithuto tse di phasaladitsweng ka nako eo ke tsa Archbell (1837), Casalis (1841), Livingstone (1858), Fredox

[5] Lereo Sotho sa Leboa le Northern Sotho a dirisiwa go kaya puo ya Sepedi.
[6] E bidiwa Dokeain period.

(1861), Brown (1876), Crisp (1880) le Whookey (1901, 1905). Ke bone bakwadi ba ba nnileng le seabe mo tshimologong ya thutapuo ya Setswana, Moyane (1995:6-7). Fela dithuto tse di ne di phasaladitswe ka Seesimane.

Mo pakeng ya tiriso (1927-1955) bakwadi ba Sandilands (1953), Cole (1995) le Van Zyl *et al.* (1950) ba phasaladitse tlhaloso ya thutapuo ya Setswana, fela ba e phasaladitse ka Seesimane, Moyane (1995:7-8). Phasalatso ya popegopuo ya Setswana e e kwadilweng ke Cole (1955) e tlhalosiwa e le "*the most comprehensive grammar book published on Setswana*" ka gore e dirisitse mokgwa o o amogelesegang go tlhagisa diteng tsa thutapuo ya Setswana, Moyane (1995:8).

Mo pakeng ya popego (1958-1974) go phasaladitswe dikwalo tsa kwa dikolong, tse di kwadilweng ke bakwadi ba le mmalwa jaaka *Malepe*, yo o phasaladitseng *Setswana sa borre* ka 1966, e e phasaladitsweng gape ka 1977. Buka e, e akaretsa dithuto ka popegopuo ya Setswana. Kopane (1967) o phasaladitse *Setswana se se phepha* e phasaletswa bana ba mophato wa boraro (grade 3, standard 1) e bile ya boeletswa ya phasalatswa gape ka 1974. Moloto le Malao (1967) ba phasaladitse *Buka ka telamo* ya barutwana ba mophato wa borobedi le borobongwe (grade 8 le 9), Mogapi (1967) o phasaladitse *Thutapuo ya Setswana*, e e lebeletseng dikarolopuo tsa Setswana le tiriso ya tsone, e ne e na le dikarolo tsa thutamedumopuo ya Setswana. Ferreira le Malepe (1968) ba phasaladitse *Tswana leerboek*.

Mo pakeng ya segompieno (1975-1993) banare (*missionaries*) ba ne ba phasalatsa thuto ka popegopuo ya puo ya Setho, e bile ba setswe morago ke bakwadi ba Batswana. Diphasalatso tse di welang mo pakeng e, di lebeletse dithuto tse, popapolelo, dikarolopuo, le mareo a madiri a tswang mo dipuong tsa SeNguni. Diphasalatso di le dintsi fa ke tse di dirisiwang mo dikolong Moyane (1991:9-11). Tsone di phasaladitswe ka Setswana, Seesimane le Seaforikanse. Diphasalatso tse di akaretsa *Puisano ya Sekgowa le Setswana* ka Wookey (1967) e e neng e akaretsa dipolelwana tsa Seesimane le Setswana*, A re bueng Setswana* ka Landsberg (1978) e leng dikwalo tse di rutang barutwana go simolola ka mophato wa boraro go fitlha ka wa lesomepedi, *Pula* e phasaladitswe ke Herman (1980), *Ithuteng Setswana* ka Setshedi (1980), *Thutapuo ya Setswana* ka Mogapi (1981), *Kitso ya Setswana* ka Lesele (1987), *Setswana sa kwa Lowe* ka Malao (1987), *Segarona sa barutabana* ka Snyman le Mothoagae (1990), *Tswana for beginners* ka Snyman (1991), *E antswe letseleng* ka Ntsime le Krüger (1993).

Diphasalatso tse di tlhageletseng ka paka ya lekgorokgoro (1826-1905) le paka ya tiriso (1927-1955) di ne di tlhagisiwa ka Seesimane, fela di ne di tlhalosa popegopuo ya Setswana ka botlalo. Ke diphasalatso tse di phasaladitsweng go tswa mo kitsong ya popegopuo ya kwa moseja. Ka paka ya popego (1958-1974) le ya segompieno (1975-1993) go ne go na le bontsi jwa dikwalo

tse di phasaladitsweng tsa sekolo tse di neng di tlhagisiwa ka Setswana, Seesimane le Seaforikanse. Ka di dirisa le go supa dibuka tsa popegopuo ya Setswana, Moyane (1995:13-22) o tlhalosa karologantsho ya mafoko (*word division*) mo Setswaneng, mme o tlhagisa le thuto ka ga dikarolopuo tsa Setswana, e bong maina, maemedi, matlhaodi, madiri, matlhalosi, maetsi, makopanyi le malatlhelwa, Moyane (1995:129-140).

Phasalatso e e botlhokwa, e e nang le seabe mo popegopuong ya Setswana ke e e phasaladitsweng ke Cole (1955). E ne e le moithuti wa ga Doke yo e leng mokwadi yo o itsegeng thata ka tlhaloso le diphasalatso mo puong ya isiZulu. Cole (1955: xxiii-xxvii) o simolotse buka ya gagwe ka go tsenya dintlhatlaleletso mo ditumanosing tsa Setswana, a tlhagisa lenaneo la dithuto tse di tlileng pele ga thuto ya gagwe. Cole (1955) o tlhagisa diphasalatswa tsa thutapuo tse di nang le mafoko le dipolelo tsa Setswana tse di kwadilweng ke Lichtenstein (1812, 1815), Cambell (1815), Archbell (1838), le Cassalis (1841). O tswelela ka go kaela gore thanodi ya ntlha e e kwadilweng ke ya dipuo tse pedi e bong Setswana le Seesimane, mme e phasaladitswe ke Brown ka (1876). O tlhagisa fa bakwadi Wookey (1901), Crips (1880), the Hermannsburg mission (1921), Van der Merwe le Schapera (1943) ba nnile le seabe ka gore diphasalatswa tsa bone di lebile popegopuo ya Setswana. Seabe sa Bleek (1862), Jones le Plaatje (1916), Tucker (1937) le Lestrade (1944) se a bonala ka ba lebeletse mokwalo le modumo mo dipuong tsa Sesotho, Cole (1955).

2.3 DIKWALO TSE DI DIRISETSWANG GO ITHUTA SETSWANA

2.3.1 Sekolo se sepotlana le se segolwane

Bontsi jwa bakwadi ba nnile le seabe mo go phasalatseng dikwalo tsa thuto tsa kwa dikolong tse dipotlana le tse dikgolwane. Re tla tlhagisa dingwe tsa dikwalo tse di phasaladitsweng ka bobotlana, re lebeletse se se akareditsweng mo popegopuong ya Setswana.

Ka 1967 Wookey o phasaladitse buka ya sekolo e e bidiwang, *Puisano ya Sekgowa le Setswana*, e phasaladitswe ka Seesimane. Ke buka e e neng e lebeletse go ruta puo ya Setswana mo barutwaneng ba e seng Batswana kgotsa ba ba sa bueng Setswana. Buka e, ke ya dipolelwana tsa Setswana le Seesimane, e akaretsa le matseno a popegopuo le tlhaloso-mafoko a Setswana. Mo popegopuong buka e e lebeletse dingwe tsa dikarolopuo e bong, maina, madiri le maemedi, le gore di tlhagelela jang mo polelong le mo dipolelwaneng.

Ntsime le Rouseau (1975) ba phasaladitse buka ya sekolo e e bidiwang *Marang*. Mo bukeng e go na le ditlhaloso ka ga popafoko ya Setswana, tse di akaretsang popego ya maina mo

bongweng le mo bontsing, go bopega ga mafoko, le go tlhaola dipopi mo lefokong. Buka e e akareditse le matseno a thutamedumopuo ya Setswana.

Ntsime le Rouseau (1978) ba dirisitse popafoko ya *Marang* (1975) jaaka motheo wa go tlhalosa popafoko ya Setswana mo bukeng ya bona ya *Puo e e tshelang*. Ke buka e e phasaladitsweng e lebeletse mephato e le supa mo dikolong. Dibuka tse di lebeletse dikarolo le dikarolwana tsa puo. Di tlhalosa ka botlalo ditlhogo tsa maina, le gore maina a tlhagelela jang mo bongweng le mo bontsing. Dibuka tse di akaretsa le popego ya madiri, popego ya maina le tiriso ya matshwao a puiso.

Setshedi (1980) o phasaladitse buka e e bidiwang *Ithuteng Setswana*, mme e lebeletse dithuto ka ga popafoko ya Setswana. Buka e e tlhalosa ka botlalo ka ga dipopi le gore di dirisiwa jang go bopa mafoko. Go tlaleletsa, buka e e neela ditlhalosokgolo ka ga dikarolopuo, dikarolwana tsa puo le tiriso ya tsona, Setshedi (1980:11-96). Buka e, e khutla ka go tlhalosa popapolelo, e tlaleletsa ka pharologano magareng ga polelonolo le polelopate go ya ka melawana ya popegopuo, Setshedi (1980:97-110). Buka e e kwadilwe le go phasaladiwa ka Setswana, e phasalalediwa barutwana ba ba ithutelang dithuto tsa marematlou, e bile e dirisiwa le kwa diyunivesithi.

Mogapi (1981) o phasaladitse *Thuto ya Setswana*, e leng dibuka di le pedi. Buka ya ntlha ke e e rutang barutwana ba mephato ya 3-5, ya bobedi ke e e rutang barutwana ba mephato ya 6 le 7. Dibuka tse di lebeletse dithuto ka ga medumopuo, mokwalo, le popafoko ya Setswana. Mo bukeng e e phasalaleditsweng barutwana ba mophato wa 3-5, e lebeletse dithuto ka ga matseno a popafoko le matseno ka ga dikarolo tsa puo. Buka e e phasalaleditsweng barutwana ba mephato ya 4-5, yone e tlhalosa ka botlalo dikarolo tsa puo tsa Setswana.

Setshedi le Malope (1982) ba phasaladitse *Thutamedumopuo ya Setswana*, e e dirisiwang mo dithutong tsa marematlou le mo diyunivesithi. Buka e e simolola ka go tlhalosa thutamedumopuo ka tsenelelo. E tswelela ka go tlhalosa dirwe tsa puo le tiriso ya tsona, Setshedi (1982,1982:3-8). Karolo ya bobedi ya buka e, e akaretsa diphetogomodumo. E simolola ka go tlhalosa ka botlalo ditumanosi tsa Setswana le ditumammogo tsa Setswana, Setshedi le Malope (1982:9-29). Go tlogeng foo buka e e tlhalosa diphetogomedumo jaaka kemofatso, kgalapatso, rinifatso, kgwasafatso, tengwafatso, le poufatso. Karolo ya bofelo ya buka e, e tlhalosa dinoko tsa Setswana ka botlalo, Setshedi le Malope (1982:62-74). Buka e e kwadilwe le go phasalatswa ka Setswana.

Lesele (1987) o phasaladitse dibukana tse di bidiwang *Kitso ya Setswana*, di lebeletse tlhalosokgolo tsa popegopuo ya Setswana. Dibuka tse, ke tsa mephato e le lesome 10. Di

lebeletse dithuto le ditlhaloso ka thutamedumopuo le diphetogamodumo ya Setswana, di neela ditlhaloso ka ga dirwe tsa puo le mokgwa wa go tlhalosa puo. Mo dibukeng tse o neela matseno ka popafoko, a be a neela le matseno ka dikarolopuo le tiriso ya tsona.

Phasalatso ya ga Snyman le Mothoagae (1990) e e bidiwang *Segarona sa barutabana* e nnile le seabe se segolo mo dithutong tsa Setswana. Ke phasalatso e e lebileng mephato 10, 11 le 12. Buka e e simolola ka go tlhalosa ka botlalo dithuto ka ga popafoko. Se se akaretsa dithuto ka ga dikarolopuo (maina, madiri, maemedi, matlhalosi, maetsi, mabotsi le makopanyi) le dikarolwana tsa teng (maemeditho, masupi, matlhophi, mathusamadiri le madirimabaa) le tiriso ya tsona mo dipolelong tsa Setswana. Buka e e feleletsa ka go tlhalosa mefuta ya dipolelo mo Setswaneng.

Snyman le Sebate (1990) ba phasaladitse buka e e bidiwang *Segarona sa Barutabana.* Buka e e lebile dithuto ka ga medumopuo le diphetogomodumo tsa Setswana e bile e di tlhalosa ka botlalo. Snyman le Sebate (1990:5-14) ba tlhalosa ka botlalo ditumanosi tsa Setswana le gore di dumisiwa jang. Ba tlhalosa gape le dirwe tsa puo le mokgwa o medumo e tlhalosiwang ka teng. Mo karolong ya bobedi Snyman le Sebate (1990:44) ba tlhalosa medumopuo le diphetogomodumo tse di farologaneng, jaaka kgalapatso, kemofatso, tlogelo, tshwaetsano, tengwafatso, rinifatso, e be e feleletsa ka tshwaetsano ya ditumanosi. Buka e, e tlhagisitswe ka Setswana.

Ntsime le Krüger (1995) ba phasaladitse dibukana tsa sekolo tse di rutang popegopuo ya Setswana tse di bidiwang *E antswe letseleng*. Mo dithutong tsa sekolo se segolwane, dibuka tse di lebeletse ka botlalo dithuto ka ga popafoko. Dithuto tse di akaretsa thuto ka ga dikarolopuo tsa Setswana. Thuto tsa dibuka tse di akaretsa le thuto ka ga diphetogomedumo le thutamedumopuo ya Setswana. Mo lekaleng la popapolelo, dibuka tse di ruta le ka ditlhopha tse di farologaneng tsa dipolelo. Dibuka tse di kwadilwe le go phasaladiwa ka Setswana.

The National Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statement (CAPS) e e leng pholisi e e amogetsweng ke Lefapha la Thutotheo (Department of Basic Education) ka 2012, e amogetswe le go tsenngwa ka gore e lebeletse go fokotsa morwalo o mogolo mo barutabaneng fa ba ruta kwa dikolong. E ikaegile ka go ntsha dikaedi tse di tla rutang barutwana, e be di nna le ditirwana morago ga dithuto go ba thusa ka go ikatisetsa tiro ka bobona. Dithuto ka ga thutapuo di arogantswe go ya ka dikaedi tsone tse di dirisiwang ke barutwana kwa dikolong tse dipotlana.

2.3.2 Dikaedi tsa go ruta Setswana mo NWU

Mo karolong e, ditlhaloso tse di potlana tsa dithuto tsa kwa Yunivesithi ya Bokone-Bophirima, mo Setswaneng e tla tlhalosiwa. Se ke go neela dintlhakakaretso tsa dikaedi tse di dirisiwang mo dithutong tsa Setswana jaaka e le puogae.

Mo dithutong tsa Setswana jaaka puogae mo NWU, go na le dikaedi di le supa tse di kgaogantsweng go ya ka dingwaga tsa thuto. Kaedi ya ntlha (SETM111) ke kaedi ya ngwaga wa ntlha, e e dirisiwang mo setlheng sa ntlha. Kaedi e e arogantswe ka dikarolo di le pedi. Karolo ya ntlha e lebeletse ditlhaloso tsa mareo, setso sa Setswana, lemorago la Setswana, tshimologo ya mokwalo wa Setswana, le tlhabololo ya mokwalo wa Setswana. Karolo ya bobedi e lebeletse dithuto ka ga ditlhaloso tsa mareo a popegopuo, go ruta puo, le go kwala puo.

Mo kaeding ya bobedi, go na le SETM 121, e bong kaedi e e dirisiwang mo ngwageng wa ntlha, ka setlha sa bobedi. Dithuto tsa kaedi e, di akaretsa matseno ka ga popafoko le ditlhalosokgolo tsa dikarolopuo (leina, leemedi, letlhaodi, letlhophi, letlhalosi, lesupi, lerui, leetsi, lelatlhelwa le lediri). E tswelela ka go tlhalosa popego ya dipolelo tsa Setswana le lemorago la ditlhangwa tsa setso.

Kaedi SETM 211 ke kaedi ya ngwaga wa bobedi mo setlheng sa ntlha. Kaedi e, e neela dithuto ka ga thutamedumopuo ya Setswana le ditlhangwa tsa sešweng. E akaretsa dithuto ka ga dirwe tsa puo le mokgwa wa taolo ya mowa. E akaretsa le dithuto ka ga ditumanosi tsa Setswana.

Kaedi ya SETM 221 ke kaedi ya ngwaga wa bobedi ka setlha sa bobedi. E akaretsa dithuto ka ga diphetogomodumo tsa Setswana. E akaretsa le dithuto ka tshekatsheko ya porosa.

Mo ngwageng wa bofelo go na le dikaedi di le tharo e leng SETM 311, SETM 321, SETM 322. Kaedi SETM 311 e akaretsa dithuto ka ga popapolelo ya Setswana le poko ya Setswana. Mo tlhalosong ya popapolelo go lebilwe tlhaloso le ditiriso ya dikarolopuo. Karolo ya bofelo e lebile dithuto ka ga poko le maele a Setswana. Kaedi SETM 321 e akaretsa dithuto ka popegopuo ya Setswana. Mo popegopuong e tlhalosa ka botlalo dikarolopuo tsa Setswana. E tswelela ka go tlhalosa dipopi, ditlhongwa e be e tswelela ka popego ya maina, madiri, madirimatswa le mainamatswa. Karolo ya bofelo e akaretsa dithuto mo tshekatshekong ya terama ya Setswana.

Kaedi SETM 322 ke kaedi e e dirisiwang mo khemphaseng ya Mahikeng. Dithuto ka ga kaedi e di akaretsa botlhamamareo, phetolelo le tshekatsheko ya terama. Karolo ya ntlha e na le diyuniti di le thataro. E simolola ka go tlhalosa lemorago la go tlhama mareo le lemorago la dithanodi tsa Setswana. E tswelela ka go tlhalosa botlhokwa jwa mofetoledi e be e feleletsa ka go neela

lemorago la bakwadi ba ba simolotseng go fetolela mo Setswaneng jaaka Robert Moffat (1795-1883) le Sol Plaatje (1876-1932). Karolo ya bobedi e neela thuto ka lemorago le tiori ya terama.

Dikaedi tse di kopantswe ka go dirisa diphasalatso kgotsa dithuto tse: Setshedi (1980) mo popafokong, Setshedi le Malope (1982) mo thutamedumopuong le diphetogomedumo, tse e leng dikwalo tsa kwa dikolong tse dipotlana fela di botlhokwa mo yunivesithi ka di kaela diteng tsa thutapuo tse di dirisiwang mo yunivesithi.

2.4 DIPHASALATSO MO MAKALENG A THUTAPUO YA SETSWANA

Mo karolong e, diphasalatso tse di welang mo makaleng ka thutapuo e leng popafoko, thutamedumopuo, diphetogomedumo le popapolelo mo Setswaneng, di tla lebelelwa.

2.4.1 Popafoko

Tlhalosokgolo ya popafoko ya Setswana e kwadilweng ke Cole (1955) *An introduction to Setswana grammar*, le Krüger (2006) *Introduction to the morphology of Setswana*, di botlhokwa ka gore di tlhalosa popafoko ka nolofalo gape di na le seabe mo puong ya Setswana. Dibuka tse di phasaladitswe ka Seesimane.

Cole (1955:57-59) o kaela fa go na le dikarolo tsa puo tse dikgolo di le thataro, e bong *substantive* (leina le leemedi), *qualificative* (matlhaodi, mabadi, matlhophi, marui, relatifi) le *predicate* (madiri, madirimabaa), tlhalosi (matlhalosi, marui), makopanyi le magokanyi. O tlhalosa ditlhogo tsa maina a be a neela le dikao tse di maleba, Cole (1955:102-126). O tswelela le go tlhalosa le popego ya maemedi, Cole (1955:127-135). Popego ya matlhaodi, matlhophi, mabadi, marui le relatifi e di tlhagisitse ka botlalo, a be a tlhalosa popego ya madiri a lebeletse modi wa madiri, mediriso ya madiri le paka. O tswelela ka go tlhalosa madirimabaa, matlhalosi, marui, makopanyi, Cole (1955:138-399). Ditlhaloso ka ga modi, kutu, ditlhogo, megatla, bong le palo, le go farologana ga matlhaodi le relatifi di tlhalositswe ke Cole (1955:401-425). Mo bokhutlong jwa phasalatso e, Cole (1955:426-458) o thadisa go le gonnye ka ga popapolelo, a akaretsa tatelano ya mafoko, sediri le sedirwa, poeletso ya masupi mo polelong le polelonolo, le polelopate.

Krüger (2006:7-28) o tlhagisa lemorago la popegopuo ya Setswana, a lebeletse boitshupo jwa mafoko, le karologanyo ya mafoko. O neela tlhalosokgolo ka popegopuo, popafoko ya (*paradigmatic*) le (*syntagmatic*) a lebeletse dipopi, popego ya dipopi, go bopega ga mafoko, le tatelano ya dipopi mo popong ya mafoko. Krüger o sala morago tsela e Van Wyk (1967) a e tsereng go bona dikarolopuo tsa Setswana (maina, maemedi, madiri, matlhalosi, magokanyi, makopanyi, maetsi, le malatlhelwa) e bo a tswelela ka go tlhalosa maemo a dipopi mo lefokong

le maemo a dikarolopuo, Krüger (2006:57-278). O tswelela ka go tlhalosa popego ya dipolelo (*Syntactic structure*) tsa ditlhopha tsa mafoko mo Setswaneng, Krüger (2006:283-310).

Mo puong ya Sepedi, Lombard *et al* (1985) ba tlhalosa ka botlalo dikarolopuo le popego ya maina le madiri. Louwrens (1991) o tlhalosa polelonolo le polelopate tsa Sepedi, fa Poulos le Louwrens (1994) ba tlhalosa popego ya dikarolopuo mo puong ya Sepedi. Louwrens *et al*. (1995) o tlhalosa popego ya mafoko a Sepedi, fa Kosch (2006) a tlhalosa diteng tsa popegopuo, jaaka dipopi, (*suppletion and sandhi, inflection and derivation, typology, exponence*).

2.4.2 Thutamedumopuo le Diphetogomedumo

Le fa go ne go na le diphasalatswa tse di botlhokwa tsa medumopuo ya Setswana, Krüger le Snyman (1986) ba phasaladitse buka ka ga medumopuo ya Setswana. Ba tlhalosa modumo o o tlhalositsweng ke Meinhof ka a lebeletse, difonimi, dikatumanosi, ditumanosi, ditumammogo le ditumanko mo dipuong tsa bantsho, Krüger le Snyman (1986:1-11). Ditumammogo (*resonant consonants, plosives, fricatives, affricatives*) le ditumanosi le ka mokgwa o di dumang ka teng di tlhalositswe mo bukeng ya ga Krüger le Snyman, (1986:63-86). Go arogana le go phatlalala ga modumo le popego ya dinoko go tlhalositswe le mokgwa o modumo o dumang ka teng go tlhalositswe.

Lefapha la dipuo tsa Seaforika kwa Yunivesithi ya Botswana (2000) le phasaladitse buka ka ga medumo ya Setswana. Buka e e neela tlhalosokgolo ka ga medumo ya Setswana, e lebile (*structuralist and generative approaches*). Buka e e akaretsa le ditlhaloso ka ga ditumammogo, ditumanosi le diphetogomodumo mo Setswaneng. Tlhaloso e e feletseng ya ditumanosi le ditumammogo le melawana ya medumopuo e tlhalositswe ke ba Department of African Languages and Literature, University of Botswana, (2000:37-61).

Malebaloa (2013) o phasaladitse malepa a puo, e leng buka e e neelang kitso e e anameng ka medumopuo ya Setswana, e akaretsa modumo, mokwalo le tiriso ya matshwao a puiso, le tumiso ya ditumanosi le ditumammogo, dikarolopuo, maadingwa le kitso e e itsiweng ka ga diane. Mo thutamedumopuong ditlhaloso ka ga ditumammogo le mokgwa wa go di dumisa di tlhalositswe ka botlalo, Malebaloa (2013:1-27). O tswelela ka go tlhagisa tiriso ya mogatla wa tirani (-an-). O tswelela ka go tlhalosa diphetogomedumo tsa Setswana a lebeletse nkofatso, le thunyafatso Maleboa, (2013:28-29). O feleletsa ka go tlhalosa maadingwa mo Setswaneng.

Snyman (1989) o phasaladitse buka *An introduction to Tswana phonetics*, e lebeletse dithuto ka ga thutamedumopuo ya Setswana. Karolo ya ntlha ya buka e, e tlhalosa lereo thutamedumopuo le botlhokwa jwa go ithuta ka medumopuo. E tswelela pele ka go neela dithuto ka ga dirwe tsa

puo tse e leng didiriso mo go bopeng medumopuo, Snyman (1989:8-32). Kgaolo ya boraro e tswelela ka go tlhalosa ka letso la mowa gore go nne le modumo, mme kgaolo ya bofelo e tlhagisa dithuto ka ga medumopuo, e akaretsa ditumanosi le ditumammogo tsa Setswana, Snyman (1989:34-75). Phasalatso e, e tlhagisitswe ka Seesimane.

Setshedi le Malope (1978) ba phasaladitse *Thutamedumopuo ya Setswana*, e lebeletse dithuto ka ga medumo ya Setswana le fonoloji ya Setswana. Buka e e phasalaleditswe baithuti ba marematlou, barutabana le ba dithuto tsa kwa yunivesithi. Buka e, e kgaogantswe ka dikgaolo, kgaolo ya ntlha e tlhalosa thutamedumopuo mme ya bobedi e tlhalosa dirwe tsa puo tse di tlholang medumo e e rileng. Kgaolo ya boraro e lebile diphetogomedumo tse di diregalang mo Setswaneng fa go dumisiwa medumo e e rileng. Kgaolo ya bofelo e khutla ka go tlhalosa dinoko tsa Setswana le bolennoko le segalo. Buka e, e botlhokwa ka e tlhalosa thutamedumopuo le diphetogomedumo tsa Setswana, yona e kwadilwe ka Setswana.

2.4.3 Popapolelo

Krüger (2013a le 2013b) ke diphasalatso tsa gagwe tse pedi tse di tlhalosang ka botlalo popapolelo ya Setswana. Krüger (2013a:10-11) o tlhalosa ditlhopha tsa mafoko ka botlalo a akaretsa (*lexical component, functional component, bilateral semantic relations*). O tswelela ka go neela ditlhaloso ka ga popego ya magokanyi, e e akaretsang magokanyi mo maineng le mo maemeding. Krüger (2013a: 107-205) o tlhalosa magokanyirui, a akaretsang matlhaodi a relatifi, (*identifying copulative relative group, describing copulative group, associative relative group, verbal locative group and particle group*).

Krüger (2013b) o lebelela popego ya ditlhopha tsa madiri, e e akaretsang madirimabaa. O lebelela gape le ditlhopha tsa mafoko tse di akaretsang tiriso ya mafoko (*internal and external*). Mo go tswa ka fa gare (*Internal*) go tlhalosiwa ka mokgwa wa dikarolopuo fa tsa ka fa ntle (*external)* e akaretsa kopano ya dikarolopuo. Krüger (2013b:328-347) o tlhalosa mefuta ya dipolelo ka botlalo e akaretsa (*interjections, vocative, commands, interrogatives and statements*). Se se neetswe jalo ntle le go tlhalosa pharologano magareng ga polelonolo le polelopate.

Lefapha la dipuo tsa Aforika kwa Yunivesithi ya Botswana (2000) le phasaladitse bukana e e tlhalosang popapolelo ya Setswana. Phasalatso e, e ikaegile ka go tlhalosa popegopuo ya Setswana e lebeletse popego ya dipolelo gore a di na le polelwana ya maina le polelwana ya madiri. E tswelela ka go tlhalosa popego ya dipolelwana tsa maina le madiri. Tlhaloso ka ga melao ya mafoko e akareditswe, go lebeletswe dikarolopuo tsa Setswana.

2.5 DIPHASALATSO TSA MAREO A THUTAPUO

Mo karolong e, diphasalatso tse di leng teng mme di bua ka mareo, kgotsa di tlhalosa mareo mo Setswaneng le mo Sepeding, di tla neelwa.

Louwrens (1994) o phasaladitse buka *Dictionary of Northern Sotho grammatical terms*, e e tla nnang phasalatso e e botlhokwa mo thutong e. Ke buka e e lebileng mareo a popegopuo mo Sepeding jaaka e le puo ya legoro le le lengwe le Setswana. Louwrens (1994) o kwala lenaane la mareo a popegopuo ka Seesimane fela a neela lereo le ka Sepedi mo masakaneng.

Lefapha a dithuto tsa Setho (Department of Bantu Education), (1972) le phasaladitse buka ya *Tswana terminology and orthography book*. Buka e, e simolola ka lemorago la tshimologo ya mokwalo wa Setswana, e tswelela ka tiriso ya matshwao, melawana ya mopeleto, ditumanosi, ditumammogo, dikatumanosi le mokgwa wa tumiso ya tsona, le melao ya mokwalo. Fa go tla mo mareong, e simolola ka go neela lenaneo la mareo ao ka Seesimane, e be e neela diphetolelo tsa mareo ao ka Seaforikanse le Setswana fela ga e tlhalose mareo a. Buka e, e akaretsa mareo a thutapuo, le mareo fela a e seng a thutapuo.

The African wordnet and multilingual linguistic terminology ke porojeke ya South African centre for digital language resources (SaDiLaR) e e leng senthara e e lebileng tsweletso ya mareo a thutapuo mo dipuong tsotlhe gore a mo molaong mo Aforika Borwa (2017). Porojeke ya bobedi e fedile ka 2019, e maikaelelo a yone e ne e le go nna le metswedi e e rutang baithuti ba mo Aforika Borwa ka dipuo tsa bona.

Boto ya Dipuontsi ya Aforika Borwa (The Pan South African Language Board - PanSALB) e tlhagisitswe ke Palamente go ya ka (Act 59 of 1995 amended by Act 10 of 1999) go godisa dipuo tse di lesomepedi gajaana ka nako ya patlisiso tse di leng mo molaong mo Aforika Borwa. Se se tlholwa ke go tlhoafalela kgodiso ya go dirisa dipuo tse di farologaneng. Boto e, e lebile puo mo dithutong tsa dikolo, diphetolelo, go tlhama mafoko le mareo, go dira maleba le teo maina a mafelo, le go oketsa ditlhangwa, melao ya dipuo le dipatlisiso ka kakaretso.

2.6 KONOSETSO

Setswana ke puo e e santseng e dira ka thata go oketsa metswedi mo lekaleng la thutapuo. Patlisiso ya metswedi e, e ne e ikaegile ka maikaelelo a patlisiso ya thuto e. Patlisiso e, e mo mareong a popegopuo, ka jalo karolo e e simolotse ka botlhokwa jwa dinako tse popegopuo ya Setswana e godileng ka tsona go fitlha gajaana. Diphasalatso tse di neng di lebile dikolo tse dipotlana le tse dikgolwane ka dithuto tsa popegopuo di simolola teng. Dikaedi tse di dirisiwang mo dithutong tsa Setswana kwa NWU di lebeletswe. Mo karolong e go sekasekilwe diphasalatswa

tse di lebileng makala a thutapuo. Kwa bokhutlong kgaolo e, e feleleditse ka diphasalatswa tse di phasaladitsweng, di lebile mareo a thutapuo mo Setswaneng le mo Sepeding jaaka e le maikaelelo a patlisiso e.

KGAOLO 3 MAREO A THUTAMEDUMOPUO LE DIPHETOGOMEDUMO

3.1 MATSENO

Setswana ke puo jaaka dipuo tse dingwe, e mafoko a yona a bopilweng ka dipopi go ya ka melawana ya popafoko. Mafoko a na le medumo e e farologaneng. Modumo ke mokgwasa o o utlwiwang ka ditsebe, Otlogetswe (2012:345). Medumopuo ke modumo o o dumisiwang ka molomo wa motho, go dirisiwa dirwe tsotlhe tsa puo, Katamba (1989:2). Medumo e bopilwe ke dirwe tsa puo, mowa le mafelo a tumiso. Ka jalo thuto ya medumo ke thutamedumopuo kgotsa fonetiki (*phonetics*), e e leng nngwe ya lekala la thutapuo (Lb. §4.1) ga mmogo le diphetogomedumo (*phonology)*, Poulos le Louwrens (1994:386-387; Louwrens, 1994:95-96; Kosch, 2006:1).

Mo thutamedumopuong go ithutiwa ka dirwe tsa puo tse di nang le seabe mo popong ya medumo. Diphetogomedumo di akaretsa dithuto ka ga ditumanosi, ditumammogo le go fetoga ga medumo. Mo Setswaneng re na le mefuta e le robedi ya diphetogomedumo, e bong kgalapatso, kemofatso, tlogelo, tengwafatso, rinifatso, tshwaetsano, poufatso le kgwasafatso. Kgaolo e, e tla sekaseka go nepagala ga mareo a a tlhagelelang mo lekaleng la thutamedumopuo le diphetogomedumo.

3.2 THUTAMEDUMOPUO KE ENG?

Thutamedumopuo ke nngwe ya makala a thutapuo e e lebeletseng dithuto ka ga boleng jwa medumopuo e e tlhagisiwang ke dirwe tsa puo tsa motho. Medumo yotlhe e e sa fitlhelweng mo puong, ga e akarediwe mo thutamedumopuong. Setshedi le Malope (1982:9) ba tlhalosa thutamedumopuo (fonetiki) e le thuto e mo go yona go ithutiwang medumopuo, e bile go tlhalosiwa boleng jwa medumo jaaka bo dumisiwa mo puong. Ba tswelela ka go tlhalosa thutamedumopuo e le thuto ka ga medumo e e dirisiwang ka metlha. Snyman le Sebate (1990:1) bone ba tlhalosa gore thutamedumopuo e re bontsha medumopuo e e farologaneng ya puo, e bo e e aroganya mme morago e e tlhalose.

Legodi *et al*. (1981) ba tlhalosa fa thutamedumopuo e le thuto e e amanang le medumo e e tlhagisiwang ke batho ka dirwe tsa puo, e diragala fa ba bua. Cole (1955:1) o kaya fa thutamedumopuo e le thuto ka ga medumo e e farologaneng, e e dumisiwang fa motho a bua sengwe, e akaretsa tshekatsheko, tlhaloso le karologanyo ya medumopuo. Go na le mefuta e le meraro ya thutamedumopuo:

- Thutamedumopuo e mo go yona go ithutiwang go dumisiwa ga modumo ke *articulatory phonetics*[7]. Jurafsky le Martin (2024:2) ba tlhalosa mofuta o wa thutamedumopuo e le thuto ka ga medumo e e dumisiwang ka dirwe tsa puo.
- Thutamedumopuo e go ithutiwang makhubu a modumo e bidiwa *acoustic phonetics*[8] Poulos le Louwrens (1994:387).
- Thutamedumopuo e go ithutiwang modumo o o tshwarwang kgotsa o o utlwiwang ka tsebe o bo o ya mo bobokong ke *auditory phonetics*[9]. Katamba (1989:2) o tlhalosa thutamedumopuo e, e le thuto ka modumo o o utlwiwang ke ditsebe.

Mefuta ya medumo mo Setswaneng e arogantswe mo dikarolong tse tharo. Ke ditumanosi, ditumammogo le dikatumanosi. Mo go dumiseng medumo e, go na le mokgwa le lefelo la tumiso la medumopuo e. Mokgwa wa go dumisa modumo ke go tswa ga mowa ka ditsela tse di farologaneng, mme mafelo ke one a dumisang mowa ka go farologana go ya go modumo o o ikaelelang go o ntsha. Medumopuo e neetswe maina go ya ka lefelo le le bopilweng mo go lona.

3.3 DIRWE TSA PUO

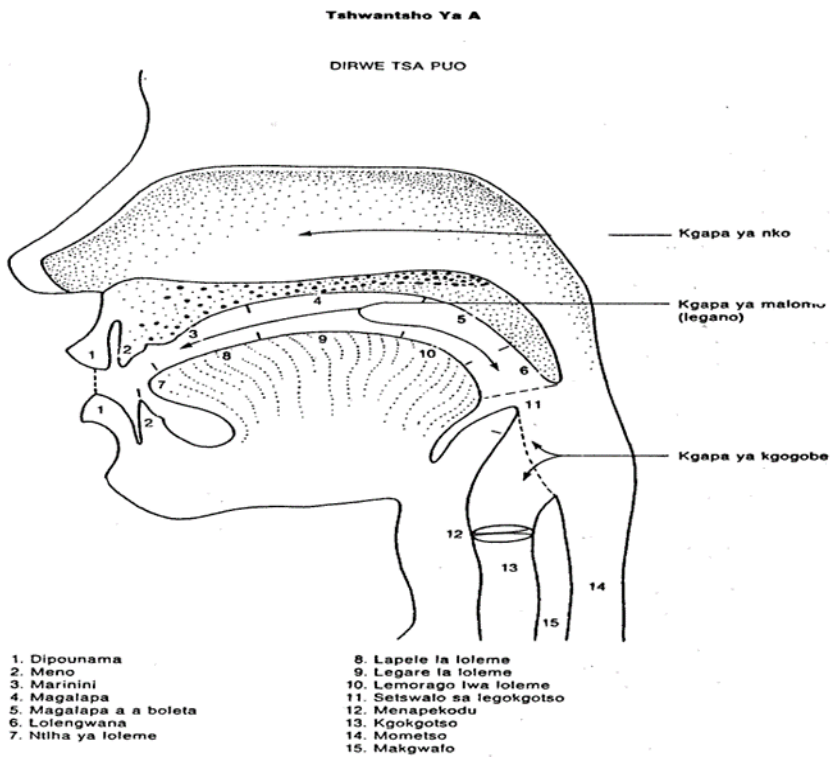
Dirwe tsa puo ke mafelo a medumo e diragalang mo go ona e bile a re bontsha taolo ya mowa gore o tswa jang mo go bopeng medumo e e farologaneng. Mafelo a tumiso a bidiwa dirwe tsa puo ke bakwadi ba bangwe jaaka Snyman le Sebate (1990:2); Setshedi le Malope (1982:4); Theledi *et al.* (2018:3). Mafelo a tumiso a a amanang le go ntsha medumo a ka arologanngwa ka dikarolo tsa moselo wa modumo. Moselo wa modumo o arogantswe ka dikarolo tse di latelang:

- kgapa ya kgokgotso/kgogobe
- kgapa ya molomo
- kgapa ya nko

Dikgapa tse tota ke ditshwago tsa kodu le meselo e mowa o tsamayang ka yona. Legano le kgaogantswe ka legare la legano le metlhagare. Tlhaloso ya dirwe tsa puo e tla sala morago tatelano ya dirwe tsa puo jaaka di tlhagelela mo sethalong se se latelang. Tlhaloso nngwe le nngwe e tla nna le nomore e e tlhagelelang mo sethalong.

---

[7] Articulatory phonetics involves the functions of human organs to form a speech sound (Snyman 1989:2; Jurafsky & Martin, 2024:2).
[8] Acoustic phonetics deals with the sound waves transmitted from one person to another (Katamba 1989:2).
[9] Auditory phonetics deals with auditory perception of sound and phonetic notation of speech sound Katamba 1989:2; Jurafsky & Martin 2024:2).



Sethalo 3-1: Dirwe tsa puo (Theledi *et al*., 2018:3)

3.3.1 Dipounama

Dipounama ke kgoro ya molomo e e kgonang go sutasuta jaaka di bonala mo sethalong mo nomoreng ya 1. Dipounama di ka bula kana tsa tswala molomo e bile di botlhokwa, Snyman le Sebate (1990:4); Setshedi le Malope (1982:7). Fa di tswala molomo, kgotsa di bula phatlha e nnye gore mowa o tswele kwa ntle, di bopa modumopuo o bidiwang ditumapou, sk. [**p**], [**b**], [**ph**], [**m**]. Dipounama di diriswa jaaka didumisi le mafelo a tumiso a kamano jaaka ditumapou le ditumapoungathi, sk. [**f**], mme ke dirwe tse di tshikinyegang.

3.3.2 Meno

Karolo ya meno e na le dikarolwana di le pedi e bong, ditlhaa le dingathi. Di bonala mo sethalong mo nomoreng ya 2.

- Ditlhaa ke meno a a mo gare, di dirisiwa gongwe le marama go bopa ditumatlhaamarama mo popong ya medumopuo ya Setswana.

- Dingathi ke meno a a fa pele, go dirisiwa dikutu tsa dingathi mo popong ya modumopuo ya Setswana, e bile go dirisiwa tse di kwa godimo mo tumisong ya tumammogo [**f**], Snyman

(1989:24). Dikutu tsa dingathi tsa godimo di dirisiwa gongwe le marinini a godimo go bopa medumopuo wa ditumarinini.

3.3.3 Marinini

Marinini a fitlhelwa ka fa morago ga dingathi tsa godimo, a bonala mo sethalong mo nomoreng ya 3. Ke nama e e apesitseng dikutu tsa dingathi tsa godimo. Snyman le Sebate (1990:4) ba tlhalosa marinini e le serwe se se fa morago ga meno a a kwa godimo. Marinini a betswa ke ntlha ya leleme, ka moo mowa o o tswang mo makgwafong, o gotlhana le marinini mme seo se bopa ditumarinini [**l**], [**t**].

3.3.4 Magalapa

Magalapa ke borulelo jwa legano jaaka a tlhagelela mo sethalong mo nomoreng ya 4. Magalapa a sala marinini morago go tswa kwa molomong go tsenelela mo leganong. Medumo e e bopiwang ke magalapa e bidiwa ditumagalapa, e bopiwa fa magalapa a kgongwa ke boteng jwa leleme, e be legano le ngotlega, Setshedi le Malope (1982:7). Magalapa a arogangwa ka dikarolo di le pedi, e leng:

- Magalapa a a thata – a dirwa ke bopele jwa magalapa fa morago ga leleme le magalapa a kwa moragonyana, [j]; le
- Magalapa a a boleta- ke letlha le le letlang mowa go tswa ka molomo kgotsa ka dinko, a tlhagelela mo nomoreng ya 5.

3.3.5 Loleme

Leleme le fitlhelwa mo bodilong jwa legano go lebagana le magalapa, a e leng tlhaka ya legano jaaka mo sethalong dinomore tsa 7-10, Setshedi le Malope (1982:8). Le dirisiwa go tlhama medumopuo e e farologaneng. Le kgona go dirisana le dirwe tsotlhe mo leganong. Le arogangwa ka dikarolo tse di latelang:

- Ntlha ya loleme
- Lepele la loleme
- Legare la loleme
- Lemorago la loleme

- Modi wa loleme

3.3.6 Setswalo sa kgokgotso

Setswalo se ke karolo e e lekeletseng fa morago ga legano, mme se kgona go ya kwa tlase le kwa godimo mo sethalong, nomore ya 11. Se kgona go tswala legano kwa morago ka go kgoma modi wa leleme fa le tswetswe jaana, mowa o o tswang mo makgwafong o tswa ka dinko, modumo o o bidiwa ditumanko, Setshedi le Malope (1982:6). Fa lelengwana le tswetswe phago ya nko kwa morago, mowa o tswa ka molomo, se se tlhola ditumamolomo.

- Ditumanko ke medumo e e dumisiwang fa mowa o tswa ka dinko, o ntsha medumo e tshwanang le [**m**], [**n**] le [**ng**]

- Ditumamolomo ke medumo yotlhe e dumisiwang fa mowa o tswa ka molomo, jaaka [**p**], [**s**], [**h**] jj

3.3.7 Menapekodu

Menapekodu ke mesifa e mebedi e e kgonang go atamelana le go katologana mme e nna ka go rapalala mo gare ga mokgokgoma e e leng fa ntlheng e e fa godimo ya kgokgotso, yona e ka bonwa mo sethalong mo nomoreng ya lesomepedi (nomore ya 12). Ke dinamana tse ditshesane tse pedi tse di lebegang jaaka dipounama mme di a ngaologa e bile di kgona go bulega le go tswalega, Snyman le Sebate (1990:03). Menapekodu e kgona go ngangega kgotsa go gagamala le go repa kgotsa go nyaisa. Medumopuo e e bopiwang ke menapekodu ke ditumakodu [**b**], [**m**], [**n**] le ditumatu [**p**], [**s**], [**t**], [**th**], [**ts**].

3.3.8 Kgokgotso

Kgokgotso ke mosele o o tshwaraganeng le makgwafo, o dirisetswa go dumelela mowa go tsena le go tswa mo makgwafong, nomore ya 13, Setshedi le Malope (1982:5).

3.3.9 Makgwafo

Makgwafo ke diarogantshi tsa mowa o o tshwanetseng go nna teng fa go ntshiwa modumo, nomore ya 15. Makgwafo ke serwe sa puo ka gore a ntsha moela wa mowa o o batlegang mo tumisong ya medumopuo, Snyman le Sebate (1990:03).

3.3.10 Kgapa ya nko

Kgapa ya nko ke tsela e e ralalwang, ke mowa fa go bopiwa ditumanko, Setshedi le Malope (1982:6). Snyman le Sebate (1990 :4) ba tlhalosa fa phago ya nko e dirisiwa fa mowa o tswa ka dinko. Phago e, e thusa go fetola kodu ya lentswe le le tlhamilweng ke menapekodu mme le tswa ka maroba a dinko gonne legano le tswetswe.

Dirwe tse tsa puo ke mafelo a tumiso a medumo ya Setswana. Setswana se na le mefuta ya medumopuo. Ditumanosi, dikatumanosi, le ditumammogo ke medumo e e fitlhelwang mo Setswaneng. Ditumammogo di dumisiwa ke dirwe tsa puo tse di tlhalositsweng fa godimo, fa ditumanosi di ikaegile ka boemo jwa leleme le kgololo ya mowa ntle le thibelelo epe. Karolo e e latelang e tlhalosa mefuta ya medumopuo.

3.4 MEFUTA YA MEDUMOPUO

Mo thutamedumopuong go na le mokgwa wa go kwala ditlhaka tsa mokwalo wa sefonetiki o o thusang go kaya boleng jwa medumopuo. Mokwalo wa sefonetiki o itsiwe ka ditlhaka tse di tsentsweng mo masakaneng a khutlonne, sk. [**p'**], [**x**]. Ditlhaka tsa medumo di itsiwe e le difonimi. Fonimi ke tlhakannye e e leng motheo wa medumopuo (Department of African Languages and Literature, University of Botswana, 2000:1). Medumopuo ya Setswana e arogantswe ka mefuta e meraro, e leng:

- Ditumammogo
- Ditumanosi
- Dikatumanosi

3.4.1 Ditumammogo

Ditumammogo ke medumo e e kgonwang go dirwa ka dirwe di le pedi tsa puo ka nako e le nngwe. Ke medumo e e dumang mmogo le ditumanosi mo dinokong tsa mafoko ka gonne e sa kgone go duma e le nosi, Setshedi le Malope (1982:14-15). Ditumammogo e itlhagisa e le medumo e e dumisiwang ka go pitlagana ga mowa, mowa ga o tswele kwa ntle o phuthologile. Ditumammogo tsone di iponagatsa di na le mafelo a tumiso e leng; tumapou, tumarinini, tumapoungathi, tumagalapa, tumagalapapele, tumatengwa, tumakgokgotso.

3.4.1.1 Diponagalo tsa ditumammogo

Ditumammogo di theilwe maina a tsona go ya ka mafelo a tsona a tumiso. Snyman (1989:59) o kaela fa ditumammogo di na le dintlha tse di rileng fa go ithutiwa ka tsona, e bong mokgwa wa go ntsha mowa (*manner of articulation*), lefelo la go dumisa modumo (*place of articulation*), modumo (*voice*), khuetso (*aspiration*), tsela ya thelelo ya mowa (*direction of air flow*), letso la mowa (origin of air flow), le mosele wa mowa (*channel of air flow*).

A) Mokgwa wa go ntsha mowa

Ke mokgwa o mowa o tswang ka ona mo dirweng tsa puo go dumisa modumo o o rileng go tswa mo makgwafong, kgokgotsong kgotsa mo lelemeng, Snyman (1989:63)

B) Lefelo la tumiso

Ke mafelo a tumiso a a ntshang modumo o o rileng, sk. dipounama di bopa medumo ya ditumapou [**p**], [**ph**], [**b**].

C) Modumo

Ke medumo e e tswang e le ditumatu (*voiceless*) e utlwala fa o dumisa [**p**] kana ditumakodu (*voiced*) e utlwala fa o dumisa [**b**], Katamba (1989:3).

D) Khuetso

Ke modumo o o dumisiwang ka mowa o o thunyang (Department of African Languages and Literature, University of Botswana, 2000:9), sk. [**ph**]. > phiri, [**th**] > tharo.

E) Tsela ya thelelo ya mowa

Ke tsela e mowa o o tswang ka yona, e ka nna ka molomo, kgotsa ka kgapa ya nko jaaka go bonala mo sethalong 3-1.

F) Letso la mowa

Ke letso la mowa, mo o tswang teng, e bong mo makgwafong, mowa o tswa ka kgapa ka kgokgotso o lebile kgapa ya nko kana ya molomo go dumisa medumo e e farologaneng.

G) Mosele wa mowa

E kaela fa mowa o tswa ka phago ya nko, kgotsa phago ya molomo, sk. [**m**] ke modumo o o tswang ka phago ya nko, fa [**r**] o tswa mo leganong.

Setswana se na le ditumammogo di le masomepedirobedi (28) tse di nang le mokwalo o o amogetsweng wa Setswana. Lenaneo le le latelang, e bong Lenaneo 3-1, le bontsha ditumammogo tse di fitlhelwang mo Setswaneng, mokgwa wa tumiso ya tsona le mafelo a tumiso a tsona. Lenaneo le, le bontsha gore tumammogo e e rileng e dumisiwa kae, e tswa ka phago efe, modumo wa yona o ntse jang le gore mofuta wa yona ke ofe, sk. tumammogo [**ph**], ke tumakemo ya tumathunya, ya tumamolomo, ya tumakhuetso, e dumisiwa mo dipounameng.

MOKGWA WA TAOLO YA MOWA				LEFELO LA TUMISO						
Mofuta wa ditumammogo	Mokgwa wa go ntsha moela wa mowa	Mosele o mowa o ntshiwang ka ona	Boleng jwa moela wa mowa	Tumapou	Tumapou-ngathi	Tuma-rinini	Tuma-galapapele	Tuma-galapa	Tuma-tengwana	Tuma-kgokgotso
Tumakemo	Tumathunya	Tumamolomo	Tumatu	p [p']		t [t']			k [k']	
		Tumamolomo	Tumakhuetso	ph [ph]		th [th]			kh [kh]	
		Tumatlhaamarama	Tumatu			tl [tl]				
		Tumatlhaamarama	Tumakhuetso			tlh [tlh]				
		Tumamolomo	Tumakodu	b [β]		d [d]				
	Tumakgwasa	Tumamolomo	Tumatu			ts [ts']	tš [ʧ]			
		Tumamolomo	Tumakhuetso			tsh [tsh]	tsw [tsw]		Kg [kxh]	
		Tumamolomo	Tumakodu				j [ʤ]			
Tumatsweledi	Tumateteselo	Tumamolomo	Tumakodu			r [r]				
	Tumagwasa	Tumamolomo	Tumatu		f [f]	s [s]	š [ʃ]		g [x]	h [h]
	Tuma-Tlhokamogwasa	Tumatlhaamarama	Tumakodu			l [l]				
		Tumanko	Tumakodu	m [m]		n [n]		ny [ɲ]	ng [ŋ]	
	Sekatumanosi	Tumamolomo	Tumakodu	w [w]				y [j]		

Lenaneo 3-1: Karata ya ditumammogo, Krüger le Snyman (1986:80-81)

Tatelano e ya medumo ya ditumammogo, e sala morago tatelano e kwa godimo ya dirwe tsa puo. Medumo e ke medumo e e teilweng maina go ya ka mafelo a yone a tumiso.

3.4.1.2 Mafelo a tumiso a ditumanosi

i) Tumapou

Tumapou ke modumo o o tswang fa go dirisiwa dipounama di le pedi. Dipounama di a amana gore mowa o se tswe ka tsona, Snyman le Sebate (1990:16-17); Katamba (1989:5). Jurafsky le Martin (2024:4) ba tlhalosa tumapou e le medumo e e tswang fa dipounama tse pedi di kopana, sk. [**p**] -pitsa, [**ph**] -pheko, [**b**] -bogobe, [**m**] -mosi.

ii) Tumapoungathi

Tumapoungathi ke modumo o o dumisiwang ka go thusana ga dirwe di le pedi tsa puo, Jurafsky le Martin (2024:4). Mo Setswaneng tumapoungathi ke modumo o o dumisiwang ke meno a a kwa godimo le pounama e e kwa tlase go ntsha modumo, sk. [**f**] -fuduwa, Katamba (1989:5).

iii) Tumarinini

Tumarinini ke modumo o o tswang fa ntlha ya loleme e kgoma bogodimo jwa legano, Jurafsky le Martin (2024:4). Mo tumisong e, ntlha ya leleme e kgoma marinini mo godimo kgotsa e ama marinini go ntsha modumo, sk. [**tlh**] -tlhobolo, [**l**] - lela, [**t**] -tatolo, [**tl**] -motlotlo, [ʧ] -tsela, [**r**] -moriri, [ʃ] -sekaseka, [**d**] -dumedisa, [**l**] -leleme, [**n**]-nolofala. Ka jalo marinini ke lefelo la tumiso mo medumong e, Snyman le Sebate (1990:18).

iv) Tumagalapapele

Tumagalapapele ke modumo o o dumisiwang fa lepele la leleme le le gaufi le lepele la magalapa go ntsha modumo [**ts**], [**tsh**], [**j**] le [**ʃ**]. Ke modumo o o dumisiwang fa lepele kgotsa bogare jwa leleme le kgoma bogodimopele jwa legano (Department of African Languages and Literature, University of Botswana, 2000:8).

v) Tumagalapa

Tumagalapa ke modumo o o tswang fa lepele la leleme le kgomane le magalapa go ntsha medumo [**ny**] -lenyalo le [**y**] -yone. Ke modumo o o dumisiwang fa leleme le kgoma magalapa a a boleta (Department of African Languages and Literature, University of Botswana, 2000:8).

vi) Tumatengwa

Tumatengwa ke modumo o lemorago la leleme le atamela go kgoma lelengwana, go bo go tswa modumo [**k**] -kokota, [**kh**] - khudu, [**kg**] - kgotso, [**g**] -gora, [**ng**]sala ngongorego. Ke modumo o o tswang fa lemorago la leleme le gatelega mo magalapeng, Jurafsky le Martin (2024:4).

vii) Tumakgokgotso

Tumakgokgotso ke modumo o o diragalang mo menapekodung go ntsha modumo [**h**] - mohumi. Ke modumo o o dumisiwang fa menapekodu e tswetswe, kgotsa e butswe gotlhelele (Department of African Languages and Literature, University of Botswana, 2000:8). Jurafsky le Martin (2024:4) ba tlhalosa tumakgokgotso e le medumo e e dumang fa go kopana menapekodu.

3.4.1.3 Bolengtumiso jwa ditumammogo

Ditumammogo di na le mefuta e farologaneng go ya ka mokgwa o di dumisiwang ka ona, Snyman le Sebate (1990:23). Mo tumisong ya ditumammogo, moela wa mowa o kgorelediwa kgotsa o emisiwa ke leleme kgotsa dipounama mo lefelong le le rileng la tumiso, e be morago o golololwa. Mo mefuteng e re na le ditumakemo le ditumatsweledi.

3.4.1.3.1 Ditumakemo

Ditumakemo ke ditumammogo tse mo tumisong ya tsona go thibiwa mowa gotlhelele mo mafelong a tumisopele o ka gololwa go tswela kwa ntle, Setshedi le Malope (1982:17). Ditumakemo di utlwala ka kemo ya mowa pele o ka di dumisa, Snyman (1989:72), sk. t > - (mophato), tlh - (tlhatlhego), tl – (setlatla), ph - (setlhopha) jj. Ditumakemo di arogantswe ka ditlhogwana tse pedi, e bong ditumathunya le ditumakgwasa, Krüger le Snyman (1989:80-81) le Snyman, (1989:74), tse di arogantsweng ka thanyo kgotsa go khuetsa ga tsona. Katamba (1989:6) o tlhalosa ditumakemo e le medumo e e diragalang fa dirwe tsa puo di kopana go thibelela mowa go tswa metsotsonyana pele mowa o tswa.

A) Ditumathunya

Ditumathunya ke ditumakemo tse di dumisiwang ka go thuntsa mowa fa o gololwa ka bonako mo o neng o thibilwe gona. Snyman (1989:68) o tlhalosa ditumathunya e le ditumammogo tse di dumisiwang ka go thuntsa ga mowa o o tswang mo mafatlheng, se se diragala fa mowa o ne o tshwerwe e be o tswa o thunya. Mo tumisong ya ditumathunya, go thibelelwa mowa go tswa kwa mafatlheng, e be go bulega serwe se se rileng sa puo go dumisa modumo oo. (Department of

African Languages and Literature, University of Botswana, 2000:8), sk. kw > kwala, thw> thwala, tw>phatwe, th> thaba, p>pounama, ph>phokojwe.

B) Ditumakgwasa

Ditumakgwasa ke ditumakemo tse di dumisiwang ka go diegisa mowa go tswa mo o neng o thibilwe gona gotlhelele. Snyman (1989:68) o tlhalosa ditumakgwasa e le medumo e e dumisiwang ka go tswala mowa, e be o ntshiwa ka lentswe le le ngotlegileng, sk. ts > tsamaya, tsh > tshimo. Department of African Languages and Literature, University of Botswana (2000:8) e tlhalosa ditumakgwasa e le medumo e dumisiwang ka go thiba mowa go tswa mo mafatlheng e be serwe sa puo se se rileng se golola mowa gore se dumise modumo oo. Katamba (1989:6) o tlhalosa gore mo tumisong ya ditumakgwasa dirwe tsa puo di kgaola mowa pele di ka o ntsha.

3.4.1.3.2 Ditumatsweledi

Ditumatsweledi ke ditumammogo tse di dumisiwang fa mowa o letlelelwa go tswela kwa ntle o sa emisiwa gope. Setshedi le Malope (1982:22) ba tlhalosa ditumatsweledi e le ditumammogo tse di dumisiwang ka go gogiwa. Snyman (1989:72) o tlhalosa ditumatsweledi e le medumo e bonwang ka go tswelela kgotsa go boeletswa ga medumo. Ditumatsweledi di arogantswe ka ditumakgwasa le ditlhokamokgwasa, Snyman (1989:74). Ditumakgwasa di akaretsa ditumakodu le ditumatu fa ditlhokamokgwasa di akaretsa ditumanko le ditumamolomo.

A) Ditumagwasa

Ditumagwasa ke ditumatsweledi tse di dumisiwang ka go letlelela mowa go tswela kwa ntle o sa emisiwa ka gope. Katamba (1989:7) o kaela fa ditumagwasa di ntsha mowa o o gwasang o o pitlaganyeditsweng mo phatlheng fa o tshwanetse go tswela kwa ntle. Snyman (1989:70) o kaela fa ditumakgwasa e le medumo e e dumisiwang ka go gapeletsa mowa mo phatlheng e khutshwane. Department of African Languages and Literature, University of Botswana (2000:9) e tlhalosa ditumagwasa e le medumo e e dumisiwang ka kgololo ya mowa go tswa mo mafatlheng. Dingwe tsa ditumagwasa ke b [**β**], g [**x**], [**h**], f [**f**]. Ditumagwasa di arogantswe ka ditumakodu le ditumatu.

- ditumakodu ke b [β],
- ditumatu s [s], h [h]

B) Ditumatlhokamogwasa

Ditumatlhokamogwasa ke ditumatsweledi tse di dumisiwang mowa o letleletswe go tswela kwa ntle o sa emisiwa gope. Setshedi le Malope (1982:22-23) ba tlhalosa ditlhokamogwasa e le mofuta wa ditumatsweledi, o mowa o thibiwang gotlhelele go lo gongwe mme o bo o fapoga fa o thibilweng gona, e be o tswa ka phatlha felo gongwe. Ditumatlhokamogwasa ke medumo e e dumisiwang ka go letlelela mowa gore o tswe ka kgololosego mme o tswa ka molomo le ka dinko (Department of African Languages and Literature, University of Botswana, 2000:9). Ditlhokamogwasa di arogantswe ka ditlhogwana di le pedi, e bong ditumanko le ditumamolomo.

- Ditumanko ke medumo e e tswang ka phago ya nko, e bile ke medumo e e dumisiwang ka kodu, Snyman (1989:71), sk. [**m**], [**n**], [**nyɲ**], [**ŋ**], [**ngw**], [**nyw**], [**nw**].

- Ditumamolomo ke medumo e e tswang ka phago ya molomo fa lelengwana le tswaletse mowa gore o se ke wa tswa ka phago ya nko, Snyman (1989:69-71)m sk. [**r**], [**lw**], [**l**]

C) Tumateteselo

Tumateteselo ke ditumatsweledi tse di dumisiwang kwa morago ga legano, mo lelengwaneng. Snyman (1989:70) o tlhalosa tumateteselo e le modumo o o dumisiwang kwa morago ga legano, o dumisiwa ke teteselo ya lelengwana. Katamba (1989:7) o tlhalosa medumo e e ntshiwa ka go atamelana ga dirwe tsa puo fela di tlogela phatla ya go dumisa modumo o [**r**] - roma.

D) Dikatumanosi

Dikatumanosi ke medumo e e dumisiwang go atlhamisitswe legano gore mowa o fete ntle le thibelelo, e bile fa molomo o bulega mowa ntse o tswa o duma jaaka ditumanosi, Poulos le Louwrens (1994:422). Medumo e, e bidiwa dikatumanosi ka gore e na le diponagalo tsa ditumanosi, tumiso ya tsona e tshwana le ya ditumanosi ka gore di dumisiwa mowa o tswa ka molomo o sa thibelelwa gope, Setshedi le Malope (1982:25). Mo Setswaneng go na le mefuta e le mebedi ya dikatumanosi, e bong [**w**] le y [**j**]. Krüger (1989:78) o tlhalosa fa sekatumanosi [**j**] se na le diponagalo tsa ditumanosi le ditumammogo. Sekatumanosi [**w**] se tshwana le ditumanosi tse di dumisetswang kwa godimo mo morago ga legano. Ke ditumanosi tse di sa kwadiweng fela o kgona go di utlwa fa motho a bua. Ke medumo e e nang le diponagalo dingwe e ditumanosi, e bile e dumisiwa jaaka ditumanosi ka kodu e e tletseng le ka mowa o tswang ka molomo fela e sa thibiwa gope.

(i) w [**w**] ke tumapou ka e dumisiwa mo dipounameng, sk. wa - o ole a tsamaya ka lenao e seng o wole, lwa - o lole le mothusi e seng lwole

(ii) y [**j**] ke tumagalapa ka e dumisiwa mo magalapeng sk. laya - o laile mothusi e seng layile, ya - o isa dijo e seng yisa

3.4.1.4 Tshobokanyo ya diponagalo tsa ditumammogo

Tshobokanyo e e latelang e tlhagisa tumammogo nngwe le nngwe le diponagalo tsa yone go tswa mo lenaneong la 3-2. Tshobokanyo e, e thusa go lemoga diponagalo tsa tumammogo e e rileng.

$$\begin{bmatrix} /ph/ \\ tumapou \\ tumakemo \\ tumathunya \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \\ tumakhuetso \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /p/ \\ tumapou \\ tumakemo \\ tumathunya \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /b/ \\ tumapou \\ tumatsweledi \\ tumathunya \\ tumakodu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /f/ \\ tumapoungathi \\ tumatsweledi \\ tumagwasa \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /m/ \\ tumapou \\ tumatsweledi \\ tumatlhokamogwasa \\ tumakodu \\ tumanko \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} /th/ \\ tumarinini \\ tumakemo \\ thumathunya \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \\ tumakhuesto \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /t/ \\ tumarinini \\ tumakemo \\ tumathunya \\ tumathanya \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /r/ \\ tumarinini \\ tumatsweledi \\ tumatlhokamogwasa \\ tumateteselo \\ tumakodu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /n/ \\ tumarinini \\ tumatsweledi \\ tumatlhokamogwasa \\ tumakodu \\ tumanko \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /tsh/ \\ tumarinini \\ tumakemo \\ tumakgwasa \\ tumathunya \\ tumakhuetso \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} /ts/ \\ tumarinini \\ tumakemo \\ tumakgwasa \\ tumathanya \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /ʃ/ \\ tumarinini \\ tumatsweledi \\ tumagwasa \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /tlh/ \\ tumatlhaamarama \\ tumakemo \\ tumakgwasa \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \\ tumakhuetso \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /tl/ \\ tumatlhaamarama \\ tumakemo \\ tumakgwasa \\ tumathanya \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /l/ \\ tumatlhaamarama \\ tumatsweledi \\ tlhokamogwasa \\ tumakodu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} /tšh/ \\ tumagalapa \\ tumakemo \\ tumakgwasa \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \\ tumakhuetso \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /tš/ \\ tumagalapa \\ tumakemo \\ tumakgwasa \\ tumathanya \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /j/ \\ tumagalapa \\ tumatsweledi \\ tumagwasa \\ tumakodu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /š/ \\ tumagalapa \\ tumatsweledi \\ tumagwasa \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /ny/ \\ tumagalapa \\ tumatsweledi \\ tlhokamogwasa \\ tumakodu \\ tumanko \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} /kh/ \\ tumatengwa \\ tumakemo \\ tumathunya \\ tumathanya \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /k/ \\ tumatengwa \\ tumakemo \\ tumathunya \\ tumathanya \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /g/ \\ tumatengwana \\ tumatsweledi \\ tumagwasa \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /w/ \\ tumamolomo \\ tumatsweledi \\ tumakodi \\ sekatumanosi \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} /ng/ \\ tumatengwa \\ tumatsweledi \\ tumatlhokamogwasa \\ tumakodu \\ tumanko \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} kg \\ tumatengwa \\ tumakemo \\ tumakgwasa \\ tumakhuetso \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} h \\ tumakgokgotso \\ tumatsweledi \\ tumagwasa \\ tumatu \\ tumamolomo \end{bmatrix}$$ [10]

Tshobokanyo: (Department of African Languages and Literature, University of Botswana, 2000:11-12)

3.4.2 Ditumanosi

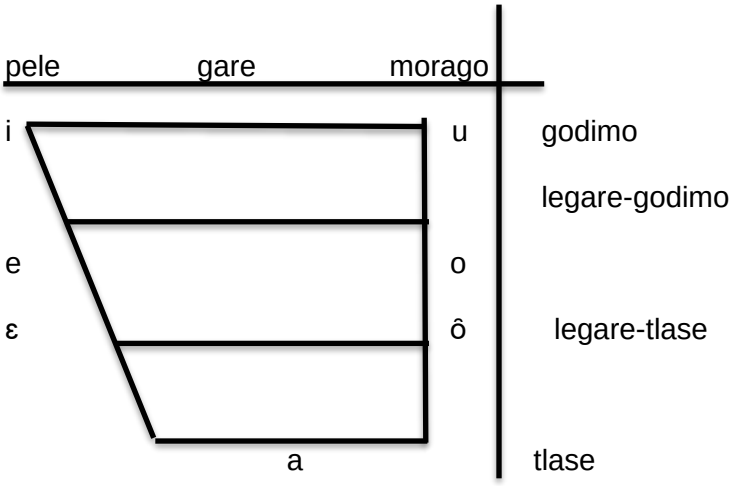
Ditumanosi ke medumo e e dumisiwang fa mowa o tswa ka molomo e bile legano le atlhamisitswe, go sena le sepe se se thibelelang mowa go tswela kwa ntle. Mo makgwafong ga go sepe se se kgoreletsang mowa go tswa fa go dumisiwa ditumanosi. Ditumanosi di ipontsha e le medumo e e dumisiwang go ya ka maemo a loleme e bile mo ditumanosing re lebelela tikologo ya tsona e seng mafelo a tsona, Setshedi le Malope (1982:9). Molebaloa (2013:4-5) o tlhalosa tumanosi e le modumo o o dumisiwang, o elela fela mo kgokgotsong kwa ntle ga kgoreletso epe. Bennet *et al*. (2016:242) ba supa fa go na le ditumanosi di le supa tsa Setswana.

Krüger (1986:77-78) o kaela fa dipuo tsa Sesotho di na le ditumanosi di le supa. Setswana jaaka nngwe ya dipuo tsa Sesotho se na le ditumanosi di le supa, tse di rulagantsweng go ya ka mokgwa o di utlwiwang ka teng. Ditumanosi tse di fitlhelwang mo Setswaneng ke a [**a**], e [**e**], ê, [**ɛ**], i [**i**], ô [**ɔ**], o [**o**] le u [**u**], Snyman le Sebate (1990:5); Poulos le Louwrens (1994:426) ba tlhalosa fa go na le ditumanosi di le supa mo puong ya Sepedi e bong, i, e, ê, a, ô, o le u. Go na le ditumanosi tsa kwa pele di le tharo, tsa kwa morago di le tharo le e e mo magareng e le nngwe. Cole (1955:4-5) o kaela fa go na le ditumanosi di le supa mo mokwalong wa Setswana o o dumeletsweng.

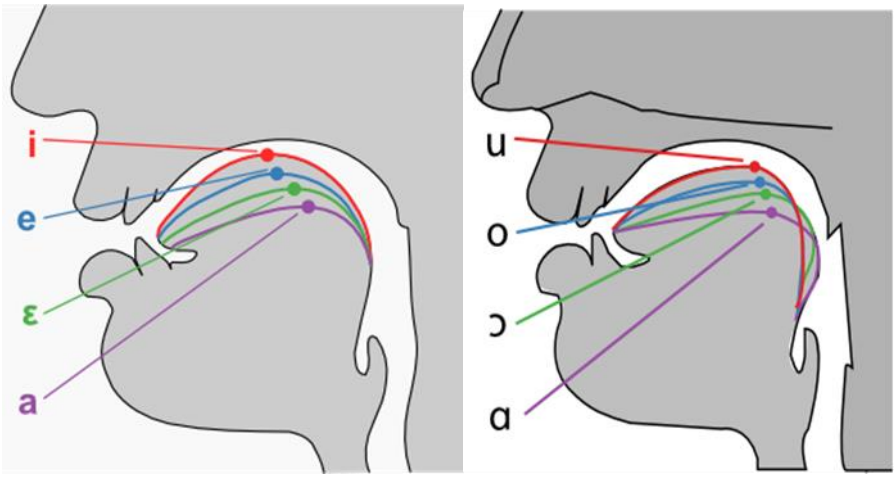
[10] Medumo ya [d] le [tsw] ga e tlhagelele mo bukeng e e tlhaotsweng, mme fela e a bonagala mo motsweding wa ga Setshedi le Malope (1982:14-16).

3.4.2.1 Papetlana ya ditumanosi

Ditumanosi di arologantswe go ya ka tikologo e di dumisiwang mo go yona, mokgwa o di dumisiwang ka ona le segalo se di dumisiwang ka sona, Setshedi le Malope (1982:9). Papetlana e e latelang e bontsha maemo a ditumanosi le phago ya legano mabapi le tumiso ya tsona. Ditumanosi mo Setswaneng di supa, go na le tse di dumisiwang mo lepele la legano le tse di dumisiwang mo lemorago la legano, mme ga nna le nngwe e e dumisiwang mo legareng la legano e bile kwa tlase. Papetlana e, e bontsha mokgwa wa go dumisa le ntlha e go dumisiwang tumanosi e e rileng ka teng.



Sethalo 3-2: Karata ya ditumanosi



Sethalo 3-3: Tikologo ya tumiso ya ditumanosi (Mirarchi, 2018:2-3)

3.4.2.2 Bolengtumiso jwa ditumanosi

Ditumanosi tsa kwa pele di dumisiwa ka go tsholetsa karolo ya kwa pele ya loleme go ya kwa magalapeng mme ga e a kgome. Ke ka ntlha ya moo ditumanosi tsa kwa pele fa gongwe di

bidiwang ditumanosi tsa magalapa. Fano gape maemo a go rapalala ga karolo ya kwa pele ya loleme a botlhokwa gonne ke ona a a tiisang kgato ya tswalelo (tsela ya taolo) ya ditumanosi tsa kwa pele. Mo ditumanosing tse, dipounama tse di phatlaletseng (*lips spreading*). Ditumanosi tse, di bidiwa ditumanosipele.

a) Tumanosipele ya legare-tlase [ɛ]

Ke tumanosi e e ka bidiwang tumagare, tumapele. Mo tumisong ya tsone dipounama di a phatlalatswa go le gonnye, tumanosi e, e fitlhelwa mo mafokong a a latelang; Fano lepele la loleme le tsholeditswe go tswa boemong jwa magareng go ya ntlheng ya magalapa. Phatlalalo ya dipounama e nnye (*little lip spreading*), Snyman (1989:54), sk: [**ɛ**] jaaka mo go [**-rɛma**], **ema, rema, segole, tsebe** jj.

b) Tumanosipele ya magare-godimo [e]

Ke tumanosi e e kopetsweng go le gonnye, e ka bidiwa tumagare, tumapele. Dipounama di phatlaladiwa go le gonnye, e bonwa bogolo thata mo gare le mo bofelong jwa mafoko (*moderate lip spreading*), Snyman (1989:54); Cole (1955:6-8). Fano lepele la loleme le tsholeditswe kwa godingwana gore lo nne fa gare ga boemo jwa legare le boemo jwa godimo. Phatlalalo ya dipounama e itekanetse, sk. [**e**] jaaka mo go [**-lema**].

c) Tumanosipele ya godimo pele [i]

Ke tumanosi e e kopetsweng, tumagodimo, tumapele. Mo modumong o dipounama di a phatlaladiwa. Fano lepele la loleme le tsaya boemo jo bo kwa godimodimo jo bo leng gaufi le go kgoma magalapa. Phatlalalo ya dipounama e buletswe (*lip spreading*), Snyman (1989:53), sk. [**i**] jaaka mo go [**-dira**].

d) Tumanosi ya tlase gare [a]

Mo tumanosing ya magareng boemo jwa loleme jwa thapalalo bo fa gare mme ga go karolo epe ya loleme e e tsholeditsweng ke gore loleme le mo boemong jo bo bidiwang “boemo jwa boikhutso” mo leganong. Moela wa mowa o feta fela kwa ntle ga kgoreletso, e bile ga gona phatlalalo ya dipounama. Tumanosi ya mofuta o ke [**a**], sk,.**-rat’a**]. Ka go moo ke Tumanosigare. Ke tumanosi e e bidiwang gape tumagare, tumatlase kgotsa tumatshiketsi. Ke tumanosi e e dumisiwang ka dipounama tse di mo maemong a a fa gare, Snyman le Sebate (1990:6). Snyman (1989:53) le Cole (1955:6) ba kaela fa tumanosi e, e le tumanositlase e e dumisiwang go atlhamisitswe dipounama (*total lip spread*). Dipounama le loleme di mo maemong a boiketlo ka gonne ga di a gagamatswa.

Ditumanosi tsa kwa morago di dumisiwa ka go tsholetsa lemorago la loleme go ya ntlheng ya magalapa a a boleta ao a tshwanetseng go nna lefelo la kgomano. Mo tumisong e dipounama tsona di golokilwe kgotsa di sediko (*lip rounding*), Snyman le Sebate (1990:6). Ke ka ntlha ya moo ditumanosi tsa kwa morago fa gongwe di bidiwang ditumanosi tsa tengwana. Fano gape maemo a lemorago la loleme a tshwanetse go elwa tlhoko gonne a tlhomamisa tsela ya taolo ya kemo ya ditumanosi tsa kwa morago. Ka ga moo re kgona go arologantsha mefuta e e latelang ya ditumanosi morago.

a) Tumanosimorago ya legare-tlase [ɔ]

Ke tumanosi e e ka bidiwang tumagare kgotsa tumamorago. E dumisiwa ka dipounama tse di sediko kgotsa tse di tshekeletsa Fano lemorago la loleme la tsholeditswe ga sesane go tswa boemong jwa legareng go ya ntlheng ya magalapa a a boleta. Dipounama di golokilwe go le ga nnye (*little lip rounding*), Snyman (1989:56), sk. [**ɔ**] jaaka mo go [**-bɔna**].

b) Tumanosimorago ya legare-godimo [o]

Ke tumanosi, e e ka bidiwang tumagare kgotsa tumamorago. Fano lemorago la loleme le tsholeleditswe kwa godingwana kwa boemong jo bo leng fa gare go boemo jwa legareng le boemo jwa godimo. Dipounama di golokilwe ka boitekanelo (*moderate lip rounding*), Snyman, (1989:56), sk. [**o**] jaaka mo go [**-loma**].

c) Tumanosimorago ya godimo [u]

Mo tumanosing e lemorago la loleme le mo boemong jwa go kgomana le magalapa a a boleta. Dipounama di golokilwe (*lip rounding*). Ke tumanosi e, e ka bidiwang tumagodimo, tumamorago e e dumisiwang ka dipounama golokilwe, Snyman (1989:55); Cole (1955:5-6), sk.[**u**] jaaka mo go [**-βula**]

3.5 DIPHETOGOMEDUMO KE ENG?

Diphetogomedumo ke nngwe ya lekala la thutapuo le le lebeletseng dithuto ka ga diphetogo tsa medumo. Ke tiragalo e e diragalang ka ntlha ya fa medumopuo fa e bapa mo puong, leleme le sa kgoneng go e dumisa ka kgololosego e be go pateletsega gore go nne le phetogo tse di tlholang diphetogomedumo. Ke nngwe ya makala a thutapuo e mo go yona go akarediwang dithuto ka ga diphetogo tsa medumopuo fa di dirisiwa, Setshedi le Malope (1982:31).

Poulos le Louwrens (1994:387) ba tlhalosa phetogomedumo e le lekala la thutapuo le le lebeletseng dithuto ka go fetoga ga medumo. Katamba (1989:1) o tlhalosa phetogomedumo e le nngwe ya lekala la thutapuo le le ikaegileng ka go batlisisa tiriso ya modumo mo dipuong go bopa medumo e e farologaneng. Diphetogomedumo di diragala mo ditumammogong le mo ditumanosing.

A) Diphetogomedumo tse di diragalang mo ditumammogong di akaretsa:

- Tshwaetsano
- Kgalapatso
- Kemofatso
- Tengwafatso
- Rinifatso
- Poufatso
- Kgwasafatso

3.5.1 Tshwaetsano[11]

Tshwaetsano ke phetogomedumo e mo go yona medumopuo e tshwaelanang ka diponagalo dingwe gore e tshwane gotlhelele kgotsa e tshwane ka bontlhabongwe. Ke phetogomedumo e mo go yone medumo e e **atamelaneng** e tlhotlheletsana gore e tshwane. Fa modumo wa ntlha o sa fetole wa bobedi, modumo wa bobedi o fetola wa ntlha ka bontlhabongwe gore o tshwane le one ka diponagalo dingwe, Setshedi le Malope (1982:50). Tshwaetsano e diragala segongwe le kemofatso le kgwasafatso. Sk. Tshwaetsano e bonala mo maineng, mo sekaong go ipontsha fa **-a** le **-i-** di tshwaetsana go nna **-e**;

thaba + (i)ng > thabaing > thabeng

[11] Tlhokomela gore go na le lereo "*vowel coalescence*" le le kayang mofuta wa tshwaetsano fa go buiwa ka ditumanosi tse di bapileng.

3.5.2 Kgalapatso

Kgalapatso ke phetogomedumo e mo go yona medumopuo e tumiso ya yona e e seng ya magalapa, e fetogang go nna tumagalapa, Snyman le Sebate (1990:44-46). Krüger le Snyman (1986) ba tlhalosa kgalapatso e le phetogomedumo e mo go yona medumo e e seng ya magalapa e fetoga go nna tumagalapa, se se tlholwa ke sekatumanosi [**j**] mo Setswaneng, sk. (3-1). Mo sekaong se [**b**] o fetogetse go [ʤw]

(3-1) go seba > go sejwa
go-seb-a go-seb-iw-a
Tlhymdg-modi-MgtlLed Tlhymdg-modi-Mgtrw-MgtlLed

Fa re dirisa setlhongwa -ana go nyenyefatsa maina a dinoko tsa ona tsa bofelo di khutlang ka dinoko **be**, **fo**, **fu**, **le**, **ph**, **ne** le **ng**. Dikao:

Leina	Nyenyefatso	Phetogomedumo
kolobe	kolojwana	/b/ > /j/ =[b] > [ʤ]
bogobe	bogojwana	/b/ > /j/=[b] > [ʤ]
phefo	pheŝwana	/f/ > /sw/ = [f] > [šw]
phofu	phoswana	/f/ > /sw/ = [f] > [šw]
lorole	lorojana	/l/ > /ʤ/ = [l] > [ʤ]

Lenaneo 3-2: Kgalapatso

3.5.3 Kemofatso

Kemofatso ke phetogomedumo mo go yona ditumammogo di ntshiwang ka mokgwa wa go tswala mowa gotlhelele, pele o ka gololwa. Ke phetogomodumo e mo go yona modumopuo o o seng wa kemo mme e le ditumatsweledi o fetoga go nna ditumakemo, Snyman le Sebate (1990:47). Ke phetogomedumo e mo go yona, ditumatsweledi di fetogang go nna ditumakemo, Setshedi le Malope (1978:33), sk. (3-2).

(3-2) go huma > khumo
go-hum-a (ne-)-hum-o
Tlhymdg-modi-MgtlLed StlhLn9-modi-MgLdrlts

Lereo thatafatso kgotsa nkofatso ke mareo a a neng a dirisiwang ke bakwadi ba bangwe go kaya phetogomodumo e. Thatafatso ke phetogomedumo e mo go yona ditumammogo tse di boleta di fetogang go nna tse di thata. Department of African Languages and Literature, University of Botswana (2000:22) ba tlhalosa lereo thatafatso (*fortition/sound hardening*) e le mokgwa o

difonimi jaaka ditumanko di fetolang difonimi go nna thata, se se diragala mo [**l**] e fetogang go nna [**d**] fa e setswe morago ke tumanosi [**i**] kgotsa [**u**], sk. (3-3). Thatafatso e nngwe e diragala mo tumanosing [i] go dira gore tumanosi e nne thata, sk. (3-4). Thatafatso e direga mo tumanko [n], sk. (3-5). Krüger le Snyman (1989:121) ba tlhalosa thatafatso e le mokgwa o medumo e e leng ditumakemo e fetolang medumo e e seng ditumakemo go nna ditumakemo. Bennet *et al.* (2016:241) ba tlhalosa lereo thatafatso e le phetogomedumo e mo go yona medumo e e seng thata e fetoga go nna thata, ba tlhalosa fa lereo le ka Seesimane e le '*fortition*'.

(3-3) go bola > sebodu
go-bol-a se-bodu
`Tlhymdg-modi-MgtlLed StlhLn7-modi`

(3-4) go ruta > go ithuta
go-rut-a go-i-rut-a
`Tlhymdg-modi-MgtlLed Tlhymdg-leitr-modi-MgtlLed`

(3-5) go loma > ntome
go-lom-a ni-lom-e
`Tlhymdg-modi-MgtlLed thysdrw1-modi-MgtlnLed`

Nkofatso ke lereo le le tlhalosang gore medumo e tswa ka dinko, ka jalo ga le a nepagala go tlhalosa kemofatso. Lereo kemofatso ke lone le le tlhaloganyegang gonne le tlhalosa gore ditumatsweledi di fetoga go nna ditumakemo, Setshedi le Malope (1982:33). Sk. kemofatso e bonwa ka [**l**] mo lema o fetoga [**t**], e bong temo [**s**] o a sila e fetoga [**tsh**] tshilo.

Fa re bopa maina ka dikutu tsa madiri ka go fetolela mogatlana wa kutu ya lediri **a** go nna **o**. Dikao:

Lediri	**Bongwe**	**Bontsi**	**Diphetogomodumo**
huma	khumo	khumo	/h/ > /kh/ = [h] > [kh]
fenya	phenyo	diphenyo	/f/ > /ph/ = [f] > [ph]
lema	temo	ditemo	/l/ > /t/ = [l] > [t]
ruta	thuto	dithuto	/r/ > /th/ = [r] > [th]

Lenaneo 3-3: Kemofatso

3.5.4 Tengwafatso

Tengwafatso ke phetogomedumo e mo go yone medumo e e seng ditumatengwa, e e fetogang go nna ditumatengwa [**ŋʷ**]. Phetogomodumo e ya tengwafatso ka gale e bonala fa ditumammogo **m** le **ny** di salwa morago ke sekatumanosi **w**.

Setshedi le Malope (1982:46) ba tlhalosa fa tengwafatso e diragala gonne tumanko ya tumapou [**m**] le tumanko ya tumagalapa [**ŋ**], di sa dumisege fa di salwa morago ke sekatumanosi [**w**] mo Setswaneng. Krüger le Snyman (1986:134) ba tlhalosa tengwafatso e le tsela e medumo e e seng ditumatengwa e fetogang go nna ditumatengwa, sk. phetogomedumo e e bonala ka [**m**] mo go **rema** e fetoga tumatengwa **ngw** mo go **rongwa**. Dikao:

Leina	**Nyenyefatso**	**Phetogomodumo**
kgomo	kgomo + -ana = kgongwana	/m/ > /ngw/ = [m] > [ŋʷ]
lerama	lerama + -ana = lerangwana	/m/ > /ngw/ = [m] > [ŋʷ]
molomo	molomo + -ana = molongwana	/m/ > /ngw/ = [m] > [ŋʷ]

Lenaneo 3-4: Tengwafatso

Tengwafatso e ka diragala fa go dirisiwa mogatlana **–iwa** go bopa tirwa ka dikutu tsa madiri tse di felelang ka **-ma** le **-nya**. Dikao:

Leina	**Tirwa**	**Phetogomedumo**
Senya	senya + iwa = senngwa	/m/ > /nng/ = [m] > [ŋ]
Tlhama	tlham a+ iwa = tlhangwa	/m/ > /ng/ = [m] > [ŋ]
Lema	lema + iwa = lengwa	/m/ > /ng/ = [m] > [ŋ]

Lenaneo 3-5: Tengwafatso

3.5.5 Rinifatso

Rinifatso ke phetogomedumo e e diragalang mo medumong e e seng ya marinini e fetoga go nna medumo ya marinini. Snyman le Sebate (1990:59) ba e tlhalosa e le modumopuo o o sa dumisweng ka marinini o fetogela go modumopuo wa tumarinini. Setshedi le Malope (1982:41) ba tlhalosa rinifatso e le phetogomedumo ya medumo e e seng ditumarinini e fetogang go nna ditumarinini e bile e diragala gongwe le poufatso le kgwasafatso. Sk. senya >sentse [ny > nts].

Fa go bopiwa nyenyefatso ya maina ka go dirisa setlhongwa **-ana**. Dikao:

Leina	Nyenyefatso	Phetogomedumo
Molapo	molapo + -ana = molatswana	/p/ > /tsw/ = [p] > [ʧʷ]
Tshipi	tshipi + -ana = tshitswana	/p/ > /tsw/ = [p] > [ʧʷ]
Morafe	morafe + -ana = moratshwana	/f/ > /tshw/ = [f] > [tshw]
Phiri	phiri + -ana = phitshana	/r/ > /tsh/ = [r] > [ʧʰ]

Lenaneo 3-6: Rinifatso

3.5.6 Poufatso

Poufatso ke phetogomodumo e mo go yona medumopuo e e seng ditumapou e fetogang go nna ditumapou. Poufatso ke phetogomedumo e ditumammogo di dumisiwang mo dipounameng, Setshedi le Malope (1982:47). Poufatso e lemogiwa ka sekatumanosi **-w** se refosana manno le ditumanosi morago **o** le **u** fa di latela ditumammogo tsotlhe kwa ntle ga ditumapou. E ka diragala e le nosi kgotsa e ka diragala mmogo le diphetogomedumo tse dingwe. E ka tlhagelela ka tlhamalalo fa re bopa tirwa mo dikutung tsa madiri re dirisa mogatlana **-iwa**, Dikao:

Lediri	Poufatso
go fa	m**ph**a
go bona	m**p**ona

Lenaneo 3-7: Poufatso

3.5.7 Kgwasafatso

Kgwasafatso ke phetogomedumo mo medumong e e seng medumokgwasa e fetoga go nna medumokgwasa. Setshedi le Malope (1982:42) ba tlhalosa kgwasafatso e le medumopuo e e seng ditumakgwasa, e fetoga go nna ditumakgwasa. Gantsi phetogomedumo e, e diragala segongwe le phetogomedumo e nngwe jaaka; kgalapatso, rinifatso, kemofatso le poufatso, sk. fa e tsamaya le:

- Kgalapatso - hupa > hutšhwa
- Rinifatso - bela > betse
- Kemofatso – sotlega > tshotlego, huma > khumo

B) Diphetogomedumo tse di diragalang mo ditumanosing di akaretsa:

- Tshwaetsano
- Tlogelo

3.5.8 Tshwaetsano ya ditumanosi

Ke mokgwa o o kayang phetogo ya bogodimo jwa loleme mo tumisong ya tumanosi ka ntlha ya tlhotlheletso ya tumanosi e e gaufi le yona, Snyman le Sebate (1990:64). Mo tshwaetsanong ya ditumanosi, ke fa tumanosi [i] le [u] di fitlhelwa mo nokong e e gaufi le e go fitlhelwang ditumanosigare mo go yona, Setshedi le Malope (1982:55). Sekao (3-6) tumiso ya tumanosi **a** fa e kopantswe le tumanosi **i** di tshwaetsana go nna **e**.

(3-6) Mosadi o jele

Mo-sadi	o	j-a-il-e
StlhLn1-modi	Thysdr	modi-MgtlLed-pypph-MgtlLed

Cole (1955:47-48) o tlhalosa tshwaetsano e le thulaganyo e e diragalang fa medumo e mebedi e atamelane e simolola go batla go tshwana ka tshobotsi. Krüger le Snyman (1986:108) ba tlhalosa tshwaetsano e le thulaganyo e dikarolo tsa medumo e mengwe di tshwaetswa ke ditumanosi.

3.5.9 Tlogelo ya ditumanosi

Tlogelo ke mokgwa o o diragalang fa go tlogelwa tumanosi e e rileng mo lefokong, Snyman le Sebate (1990:52). Setshedi le Malope (1982:56) ba tlhalosa tlogelo e se phetogomedumo ka gore ga gona phetogo epe e e diragalang, ka jalo tlogelo ke mokgwa o medumo e tlogelwang go lolamisa dinoko tse di fosagetseng. Tlogelo e diragala fa go bopiwa maina a felelang ka **-a** go dirisiwa mogatlana **-ana**, sk. (3-7), mo mareong botsalano le marui (3-8), mo dikaong tse di farologaneng, sk. (3-9).

(3-7) thabana
thaba + -ana
(ne-)-thaba-ana
StlhLn9-kutu-Mgny

(3-8) mmaagwe

mma wa gagwe

(-)-mma	wa	gagwe
Sthln1a-modi	thyrui	lemrui

(3-9) mollo

mo-lelo

StlhLn3-modi

3.6 KONOSETSO

Kgaolo e e sekasekile mareo a thutamedumopuo le diphetogomedumo tse e leng makala a thutapuo. Mareo a a tlhalositswe ka mokgwa wa tatelano e e leng mo dithutong tsa thutapuo ya Setswana. Kgaolo e, e simolotse ka go neela ditlhalosokgolo tsa mareo a a welang mo lekaleng la thutamedumopuo, se se akaretsa ditlhaloso ka dirwe tsa puo, ditlhaloso ka ga mefuta ya medumopuo e e leng ditumammogo, ditumanosi le dikatumanosi. Kgaolo e e neetse ditlhaloso ka ga diponagalo tsa mefuta ya medumopuo e e tlhagelelang. Morago kgaolo e e feleleditse ka go tlhalosa diphetogomedumo. Ditlhaloso ka tsa diphetogomedumo di akaretsa ditlhaloso ka kgalapatso, kemofatso, tengwafatso, rinifatso, tshwaetsano, poufatso, kgwasafatso le tlogelo. Ditlhaloso tsotlhe di neetse dikao tse di maleba go tlhagisa se se umakilweng. Ka jalo kgaolo e e tlhalositse mareo otlhe a a welang mo lekaleng la thutamedumopuo le diphetogomedumo.

KGAOLO 4 MAREO A POPAFOKO

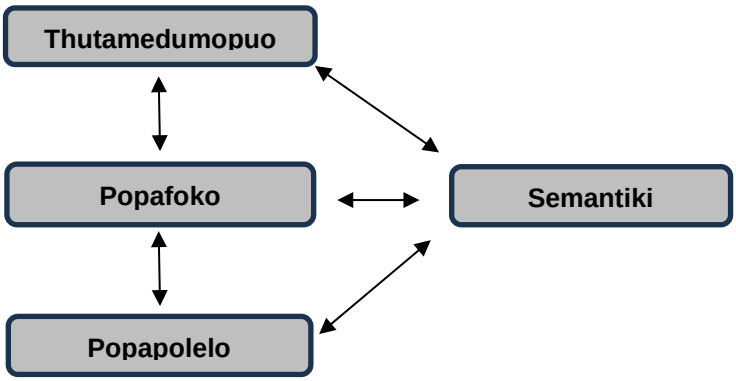
4.1 MATSENO

Mo Setswaneng go tshwana le mo dipuong tse dingwe, puo e na le dipolelo le dipolelwana. Dipolelo le dipolelwana tse di kgaogantswe ka mafoko kgotsa ditlhopha tsa mafoko go ya ka melawana ya popegopuo le mokwalo wa Setswana. Mafoko a, le ditlhopha tse tsa mafoko di na le tsela e di bopiwang ka yone ka mokgwa wa popafoko mme mafoko a, a bopiwa ke dipopi. Mo popong ya mafoko go na le mefuta e e farologaneng ya go bopa mafoko ka melawana ya popafoko.

Mo Setswaneng go na le ditsela tse di farologaneng tsa go bopa mafoko. Mafoko a ka bopiwa ka go tsengwa ditlhongwa mo moding ka mokgwa wa katoloso kgotsa ga bopiwa lefoko le leswa go tswa dikarolong dingwe tsa puo go ya ka melawana ya popegopuo. Mokgwa o wa go bopa mafoko o ka diragala ka go tswakanya medi le go tswakanya dikutu, go boeletsa mafoko go bopa mafoko a a gatelelang bokao jo bo tlhalosiwang ke Kosch (2006:84-129) le Krüger (2006:41).

Mo Setswaneng o ka bopa mafoko go tswa mo dikarolong tse dingwe tsa puo, se gantsi se bonala mo maineng le mo madiring. Maina a a tswang mo meding ya madiri e nna mainamatswa, fa madiri a a tswang mo maineng e nna madirimatswa tse e leng karolwana ya popafoko mme di tlhalosiwa sentle ke Krüger (2006:114 le 195).

Popafoko ke nngwe ya makala a thutapuo mme e na le kamano le makala a mangwe, e bong thutamedumopuo le diphetogomedumo tse di tlhalosang medumopuo, popapolelo e e leng karolo e e bopang dipolelo tse di nang le bokao “semantiki”, Katamba (1993:205-265).



Sethalo 4-1: Makala a thutapuo (Kosch 2006:1)

Kgaolo e, e tla tlhalosa mareo a a welang mo lekaleng la popafoko jaaka e le nngwe ya makala a thutapuo. Makala a thutapuo a ikaegile ka go lebelela puo ka tlhamalalo, a lebeletse dipopi, modumo, dipolelo le bokao. Popafoko yone e ikaegile ka go lebelela kagego ya lefoko jaaka e le yuniti ya puo.

4.1.1 Popafoko ke eng?

Popafoko ke thuto ya go bopa mafoko o dirisa dipopi tse di farologaneng. Ke thuto ka ga dipopi tse di farologaneng le popego ya mafoko. Thuto ka ga popafoko e akaretsa thuto ka dipopi, popego ya mafoko le dikarolo tsa puo.

Kosch (2006:2) o tlhalosa popafoko e le thuto ka ga popo e e leng ya mafoko. Katamba (1993: 3-5) o tlhalosa popafoko e le thuto ka ga diteng-gare tsa mafoko, e e nnileng teng ka dingwaga tsa bogologolo ka Seesimane, tsa ngwagakgolo wa lesomerobong. Louwrens (1994:115) o tlhalosa popafoko e le thuto ka ga dipopi le ka mokgwa o di dirisiwang ka teng go bopa lefoko.

Mo karolong e, mareo a a welang mo setlhopheng sa popafoko a tla tlhalosiwa ka botlalo e be go neelwa dikao. Lenaneo la karolo e, le tla salana morago ka tsela e diteng tsa popafoko di salanang morago ka gone go ya ka dithuto tsa popafoko. Diteng tse di welang mo tlase ga popafoko ke:

- Dipopi
- Go bopa ga mafoko
- Dikarolopuo le dikarolwana tsa dikarolopuo tseo

4.2 POPI KE ENG?

Popi ke karolo ya lefoko e e nang le bokao, e na le medumo le bokao e bile ke karolo ya lefoko, ka jalo go ka twe popego le bokao jwa popi ke karolo ya popego le bokao jwa lefoko. Katamba (1993:25) o kaya fa popi e le karolo e nnye e e farologanang le lefoko ka popego e bile ga le kgone go aroganyega. Cole (1955:65) o kaela fa popi e le karolwana ya lefoko e e sa kgoneng go ikemela e le nosi. Kosch (2006:2) o tlhalosa popi e le karolo e nnye mo lefokong e e nang le bokao.

Mo sekaong (4-1) fa tlase, leina **monna** le bopilwe ka tlhogo **mo**- e e nang le bokao le modumo, e kopantswe le modi **-nna** o o nang le bokao le modumo, go bopa lefoko ***monna***. Lediri **o ja** le bopilwe ka dipopi di le tharo. Popi ya ntlha ke thuanyisedirwa ***o***-, ya salwa morago ke modi wa

lediri **-j-** le mogatlana wa lediri **-a**. Leina **bogobe**, le bopilwe ka tlhogo ya leina **bo-** le modi wa leina **-gobe**, sk. (4-1).

(4-1) Monna o ja bogobe.

mo-nna	o-j-a	bo-gobe
StlhLn1-modi	Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn14-modi

4.2.1 Mefuta ya dipopi

Go na le mefuta e e farologaneng ya dipopi go ya ka basekaseki kgotsa bakwadi ba bogologolo. Katamba (1993:41-52) o bona go na le mefuta e ya dipopi e bong modi, ditlhongwa, kutu le motheo. Krüger (2006:35-36) ene o supa fa go na le modi, ditlhongwa (tsa thutapuo) le kutu. Kosch (2006:6-8) o bona go na le modi le ditlhongwa. Cole (1955:65) o kaela fa go na le mefuta e meraro ya dipopi. O kaela fa go na le modi, ditlhogo le megatla. Fela o kaela fa mareo a tlwaelegileng e le; modi, kutu, magokanyi, megatla le makopanyi.

Setshedi (1980:7-8) o kaela fa go na le mefuta e mebedi ya dipopi go ya ka tiriso ya tsona, e bong popifoko le popipolelo. Popifoko ke dipopi tse di dirisiwang go bopa mafoko, tsone ke tlhogo, modi le megatla. Popipolelo ke dithuanyi tse di dirisiwang go ruanya mafoko fa a dirisitswe mmogo mo polelong, Setshedi (1980:7-8).

Go na le mefuta e e farologaneng ya dipopi go ya ka bakwadi ba ba farologaneng. Bakwadi bangwe ba bogologolo jaaka Setshedi (1980) le Cole (1955) ba sala morago tsela e Doke (1981:287) a e kaelang. Doke (1981:287) o kaela fa kutu ya lediri e bopilwe ka modi le megatla, se se tswa mo kitsong ya gagwe ya dipuo tsa kwa moseja, kutu ya dipuo tseo e bopilwe ke modi le megatlana. O kaela fa tlhogo ya lediri e le kutu ka boyona. Ziervogel (1985:2) le Taljaard le Bosch (1988:13) ba sala morago se Doke a se buileng, ba kaela le gore leina le bopilwe ka tlhogo le kutu. Mo dipuong tsa Sesotho, re lebeletse Setswana, kutu ya lediri e bopiwa ke modi le ditlhongwa tsotlhe, ditlhogo, megatla le megatlana.

4.2.1.1 Modi

Modi ke karolo ya lefoko e e nang le bokao e bile e sa fetolwe, mme e le e e salang fa go ntshitswe ditlhongwa (megatlana le ditlhogo) tsotlhe. Ke motheo wa lefoko, sk. (4-2) **di a diragala** se kgaogantswe jaana **di-** (tlhogo) + **-a-** (popi ya pakajaanong) + -**dir**- (modi wa lediri) + - **agal**- (mogatla wa lediri) + **-a** (mogatlana wa lediri).

(4-2) di a **dir**agala
di-a-dir-agal-a
thysdr-Pypkj-modi-Mgwtrg-MgtlLed

Modi ke karolo e bakwadi ba bogologolo ba ne ba sa e tlhalose ka tlhamalalo, ba ne ba e kopakopanya ke kutu. Se se tlholwa ke motheo wa modi wa maina le wa madiri. Mo Setswaneng re dumelana le bakwadi ba ba latelang, ka se ba se tlhalosang ka modi;

Posthumus (1993:30) o dumelana le Lyons (1990:59) gore modi ke:

> A root is a lexical morpheme of the word that is morphologically unanalysable which can be affixed to have a complete word therefore it is not equivalent to a word.

Louwrens (1994:170-171) o tlhalosa modi e le:

> It refers to a portion in a word structure that remains after all the affixes have been removed, and not derived from any word categories.

Kosch (2006:7) o tlhalosa modi e le:

> Roots are single morpheme that carry the principal semantic load of a word, which they occur as free or bound morpheme.

Krüger (2006:71-73) le Lyons (1990:59) ba kaela se se latelang ka modi:

> Roots are morphologically unanalyzable states that there are distinct types of roots, being primary nominal roots (**-nna** in **monna**), secondary norminal roots (verbal roots **-ag-** in **moagi**, idiophonic roots (**-fii-** in **lefifi**) and roots of origion (**-kere** in **sekere).**

Modi ke popi e ya lefoko e e nang le bokao, mme e tsenngwa ditlhongwa gore o nne lefoko le le feletseng. Mo Sekaong (4-3) fa tlase fa, modi ***rek***- mo lediring **go rekisa** ke sekao sa modi o o fitlhelwang mo lediring. Go na le mefuta ya medi e e latelang:

(4-3) go rekisa
go-rek-is-a
Tlhymdg-modi-mgwtrs-mgtlLed

- **Medi ya madiri**
  - Medi tota (medi e e ikemetseng) - ke medi ya madiri, sk. **rat- (rata), rut- (ruta)**
  - Medi e e tswang mo maineng, sk. **boboi (go boifa)**

- Medi e e tswang mo maetsing, sk. **fii (go fifala)**

- **Medi ya maina**
  - Medi ya maina, sk. **-nna** (**monna**), -sadi (**mosadi**)

4.2.1.2 Setlhongwa

Go tlhongwafatsa kgotsa go tsenya setlhongwa mo lefokong kgotsa mo moding, ke go tsenngwa ga popi, go oketsa kgotsa go fetola bokao jwa lefoko le le rileng. Mo sekaong (4-4) fa tlase fa**,** lefoko motho ke kutu e e agegileng ka tlhogo **mo-** le modi **-tho**. Mo kutung e go tsentswe setlhongwa sa felo **-ng**. Ka setlhongwa se se latelang modi, se bidiwa mogatla. Popi **-ng** e tsentswe mo leineng go fetola bokao jwa leina gore e nne leinafelo.

(4-4) motho > mothong
mo-tho mo-tho-ing
`StlhLn1-modi stlhLn1-modi-pyf`

Mo lediring, popi **-ng** e fetola bokao jwa lediri gore le nne mo bontsing, mo sekaong (4-5) se se fa tlase **rekang ditlhare!**, lediri **reka** ke kutu e e agegileng ka modi **rek-** le mogatlana **-a**. Mo sekaong lediri le le tsentswe popi **–ng**, go fetola bokao jwa lediri gore le ye mo bontsing mo modirisong wa taelo.

(4-5) Rekang ditlhare!
rek-a-ng di-tlhare
`Modi-MgtlLed-MgtlLed StlhLn8-modi`

Sethalo se se bontsha manno a mogatla le mogatlana mo maineng le mo madiring:

Lefoko (Word)	**Tlhogo (Prefix)**	**Modi (Root)**	**Mogatla (Suffix)**	**Mogatlana (Ending/Terminative)**
motho	mo-	-tho		
mothong	mo-	-tho	-ng	
go kwala	go-	-kwal-		-a
go kwadisa	go-	kwal-	-is-	-a

Lenaneo 4-1: Ponagalo ya ditlhongwa mo lefokong

Setlhongwa ke popi e e tsenngwang mo karolong ya lefoko kgotsa mo moding e be e fetola tlhaloso le bokao jwa lefoko leo, Krüger (2006:29-390); Pretorius (2014:49-70). Ditlhongwa di arogantswe ka mefuta e mebedi go ya ka kemo ya tsone tebang le modi wa lefoko, mefuta e e leng **tlhogo** le **mogatla**.

4.2.1.3 Tlhogo

Tlhogo ke popi e e fitlhelwang fa pele ga modi wa lefoko. Mo madiring e ka tlhagelela ka tsela e e latelang. Leba, sk. (4-6) se bopilwe ka**; thuanyisediri (ba)**, popi ya pakatlang (**tla)** le thuanyisedirwa (**di)** tseo e nnang ditlhogo fa pele ga lediri (**tlisa)**.

(4-6) Ba tla di tlisa.
ba-tla-di-tl-is-a
Thysdr-Pyptl-Thysdrw-modi-Mgwtrs-MgtlLed

Mo maineng tlhogo e dirisiwa jaaka setlhophaina. Tlhogo ke yone e bontshang gore leina le le rileng le wela mo setlhopheng sefe sa maina, e bile e bontsha fa leina le le mo bongweng kgotsa mo bontsing. Ditlhogo tse di tla fa pele ga modi, sk. (4-7) leina **motho** le na le tlhogo **mo-** le modi **-tho**. Se se tla tlhalosiwa mo karolong ya maina mo tswelelong ya patlisiso e. Ditlhogo ga di tsenngwa mo mafokong a a ikemetseng a lebega jaana, **ka selepe** le **mo lenaneong**. **Ka** le **mo** ke magokanyi a a dirisitsweng jaaka ditlhogo mo polelwaneng eo.

(4-7) motho
mo-tho
StlhLn1-modi

Mo ditlhogong tsa madiri go na le tlhogo ya kganetso e e leng tlhogo e e tlang fa pele ga modi mme e ganetsa lediri e be le fetola mogatlana wa lediri. Tlhogo e e bonwa ka **-ga, -sa**, **-se**. Leruanyi la sediri ke tlhogo ya lediri ka gore ke popi e e emetseng sediri mo lediring le kaya setlhopha le palo. Go na le maruanyi a sediri a a sa kaeng felo, go na le a setlhopha sa **-go**, e be go nna le a a kayang felo (fa, go, mo). Leruanyi la sedirwa- ke popi e e emelang sedirwa mo polelong. Go na le maruanyi a sediri a a sa kaeng felo, go na le a setlhopha sa **-go**, go na le a a kayang felo, e be go nna tlhogwana ya leitiri **(n(i)),** sk**. monna o tla ikwadisa**. Go na le popi ya tlhakore e e kayang kgonego - ke e bonwang ka popi ya jaanong **-a**, popi ya tsweletso **-sa**, le popi ya kgonego **-ka**, le yone ke tlhogo ya lediri.

4.2.1.4 Mogatla

Mogatla ke popi e e latelang modi wa lefoko. Mo madiring go na le dikarolo tse tharo tsa megatla go ya ka maemo a yone mo moding, Krüger (2006:258). Karolo ya ntlha ke ditlhongwa seka-umang, e be go latela ditlhongwa umang, mme karolo ya bofelo ke megatlana.

4.2.1.4.1 Ditlhongwa seka-umang

- Mogatla tirolodi - ke ditlhongwa tse di fetolang bokao jwa lediri go nna lelatodi, sk. **tlhoma** e nna **tlhomoga** le **tlhomola** , **apara** e nna **apola** le **apoga**. Ke ditlhongwa tse di dirang tiro ya go busetsa tiragalo ya lediri kwa morago. E na le mefuta e mebedi, e bong lefeledi (**-og, -olog**) le lefeletsa (**-ol, -olol**). Sekao: **Mosimane o ne a apola diaparo** le **Mosadi o ne a tlhomola pelo**.

- Mogatla tiregi-tirwa mo lediri rata e nna ratega, roba e nna robega (-eg, -agal, eseg, agan). Sekao: Legong le ne la robega.

- Mogatla tlhongwa lediri ditlhongwa tse di dirisiwa go bopa madirimatswa, sk**.** boi e nna boi**f**a, sweu e nna sweu**fal**a (**-f-, -fal-**). Sekao: **Mosetsana o boifa lefifi** le **Ngwana o ne a golafala morago ga go tlhagelwa ke kotsi**.

- Mogatla tiraki ke mogatla o o kaelang gore tiro e e kaiwang ke lediri e dirwa ka mekgwa e (go gatelela go feta selekanyo) **bofa** e nna **bofakaka,** (go dira ka tsenelelo) **botsa** e nna **botsaka** (ka kgatelelo) le **gata** e nna **gataka** (**-ak**). Sekao, **Morutabana o be a botsakaka dipotso morago ga teko**.

4.2.1.4.2 Ditlhongwa umang

- Mogatla tirisi (-is-, -y-): reka e nna rekisa, sk. Monna o rekisa dijo mo tseleng le dira e nna dirisa, sk. O dirisa garawe go tlhagola.

- Mogatla tiredi (-el-, -ets-): dira e nna direla, sk. Monna o direla mosadi dijo le tlisa e nna tlisetsa, sk. Mosadi o tlisetsa bana dijo.

- Mogatla tirani (-an): rata e nna ratana, sk. Mosidi o ratana le Pule le botsa e nna botsana, sk. Baemedi ba botsana dipotso.

- Mogatla wa pakapheti (-il-): reka e nna rekile, sk. Morutabana o rekile dipene maabane, roba e nna robile, sk. Bana ba robile lefeelo maloba.

- Mogatla tirwa (-w-, iw): go aga e nna go agwa/go agiwa, sk. Ba ne ba bua ka go agwa ga motse le araba e nna arabiwa, sk. O ne a arabiwa ke baithuti.

Kosch (2006:8-10) o tlhalosa ditlhongwa e le:

> Affix is the term used to refer to an element that cannot occur independently, they occur in conjunction with roots to form words and serve to modify the meaning of a word or rather to change a word according to the grammatical meaning.

Louwrens (1994:6-7) ene o tlhalosa ditlhongwa e le:

> A morpheme that is added to the structure of the word to modify its meaning and affixes are divided into three types (Prefix, suffix, infix); this is according to the position they are in.

Mo go se Kosch (2006:9) a se buang, mo Setswaneng popi ya **-di** mo lediring **go di rekisa** e bonala e le thuanyisedirwa, ka e emetse sedirwa sa polelo le fa se sa bonagale. Mo Setswaneng go bonala go se bonolo go nna le setsenngwa-gare (*infix*).

Mo maineng go na le mefuta e le meraro ya megatla. Cole (1955:108-111) le Krüger (2006:93) ba dumela fa go na le mefuta e le meraro ya megatla ya maina, e bong mogatla wa nyenyefatso, mogatla wa felo le mogatla wa go sadifatsa. Fa Setshedi (1980:11-12) ene a supa fa go na le megatla e le mebedi mo maineng, e bong mogatla wa nyenyefatso le mogatla wa felo.

Ka mogatla wa nyenyefatso leina le bopa ngotlo ya lona ka go dirisa mogatla **-ana** kgotsa **-nyana**. Ka mogatla wa felo, leina le dirisa mogatla **-ng**. Mogatla **-gadi** o dirisiwa go bopa leina le le tlwaelegileng e le la banna go le sadifatsa. Mo sekaong ke rata mothonyana wa me, leina **mothonyana** le bopilwe ke tlhogo **mo-** ya setlhopha sa ntlha, modi **-tho** le mogatla wa nyenyefatso **-nyana**. Sethalo se se fa tlase se tla supa maina a a tsentsweng megatla e.

Leina	**Mogatla wa nyenyefatso** **(-ana, -nyana)**	**Mogatla o o kayang felo** **(-ng)**	**Mogatla wa go sadifatsa** **(-gadi, -adi)**
sekolo	sekolonyana/sekolw**ana**	sekolo**ng**	-
motho	mothonyana/mothw**ana**	motho**ng**	-
kgosi	kgosinyana/kgos**ana**	kgosi**ng**	kgosi**gadi**

Lenaneo 4-2: Ponagalo ya megatla ya leina mo leineng

Louwrens (1994:17) o kaya fa Northern Sotho e bitsa lereo la '*argumentative suffix'* e le moselakgodisi. O tswelela ka go re, mogatla o **-gadi** o bonala mo maineng, e bile ke mogatla o o tlhalosang leina e le selo se segolo sk. **nokagadi**. Fela mo malatsing a gompieno mogatlana o o dirisiwa go sadifatsa maina mo Setswaneng le mo Sepeding. Cole (1955:110) o kaela fa bontsi

jwa maina mo Setswaneng a na le mogatla **-gadi** kgotsa **-adi**. O tswelela ka gore ke mogatla o o golaganeng le sesadi kgotsa nyalo. Sekao **bogadi**, **rakgadi**, **mogogadi**, **kgosigadi**.

4.2.1.5 Kutu

Kutu ke popi e e bopiwang ke modi le ditlhongwa tsotlhe, e bile e mo maemong a le mangwe le lefoko. Mo leineng kutu e bopiwa ke tlhogo le modi, fa mo madiring e bopiwa ke tlhogo modi le mogatlana. Setshedi (1980:7) o kaela fa kutu ya lediri e le popi e kgolwane, e e bopiwang ke **tlhogo**, **modi** le **mogatlana**. Mo polelong (4-8), lediri **go reka** le bopilwe ka tlhogo ya modirisogo **go-,** modi **rek-** (modi wa lediri) e be le nna le mogatlana -**a**, fa di kopane di bopa kutu e bong **go reka**. Leina **monnanyana** le na le tlhogo -**mo**, modi e leng -**nna** le mogatla -**nyana**, sk (4-9). Kutu e bopiwa fa modi le ditlhongwa di kopantswe, e bile se ga se feletse mo polelong se bonwa e le lefoko le le ikemetseng.

(4-8) go reka dijo

go-rek-a	di-j-o
`Tlhymdg-modi-MgtlLed`	`StlhLn8-modi-MgtlLed`

(4-9) monnanyana

mo-nna-nyana

`StlhLn1-modi-Mgny`

Krüger (2006) a re:

> Stems may include in addition to their root one or more derivational affixes.

Posthumus (1993:31) o tlhalosa kutu e le:

> It includes a root and one or more than one affix, it has a word correlation in lexicon this is on the same level as a word.

Kosch (2006:10-11) o kaya kutu e le:

> Stem is a word that consists of the root plus all the suffixal morphemes in the word. The stem which consists of a verb root followed by a suffix -a is referred to as **basic stem (rut- + -a= ruta)**, the stem which consist of a root and two or more suffixes is known as **extended stem (rut- + -el + a+ rutela)**.

Cole (1955:66) o tlhalosa kutu e le:

> The portions of words which remains when all prefixal formatives are removed, for example go rata > rata, go ratana > ratana.

Cole (1955) o sala morago tsela e Doke (1981:287) a e kaelang. Doke (1981:287) o kaela fa kutu ya lediri e bopilwe ka modi le megatla, se se tswa mo kitsong ya gagwe ya dipuo tsa kwa moseja. Mo Setswaneng re sala morago se se builweng ke Krüger (2006), Posthumus (1993:31), le Kosch (2006) mo tlhalosong tsa bone tsa kutu. Lebaka legolo e le gore ba tlhalosa kutu ya lediri e bopilwe ka modi le ditlhongwa (ditlhogo, megatla le megatlana).

4.2.1.5.1 Lefoko

Lefoko ke karolo e e botlhokwa mo puong e e nang le bokao gape e dirisiwa go bopa dipolelo. Lefoko le bopilwe ka dipopi tse di farologaneng. Maina a bopilwe ke ditlhogo/ditlhophaina le modi wa leina, se se tlhalositswe mo maineng. Madiri a bopiwa ke modi le megatla. Louwrens (1994:114) o kaela gore lefoko le bopilwe ke modi le ditlhongwa. Kosch (2006:03-04) o kaela gore mo popafokong, go na le mefuta e mebedi ya mafoko e leng lefoko la mokwalo le lefoko la thutapuo. Kosch (2006:03) o kaela fa lefoko la mokwalo e le lefoko "*convention and pertain written representation*" fa mokwalo wa thutapuo e le "*words that denote units which function as members of word categories with their meaning*."

4.2.1.5.2 Leadingwa/Lethopiwa

Leadingwa ke lereo le le tlhamilweng go tswa mo mafokong a dipuo tse dingwe, gore a teye dilo tse di tlhokang mareo mo puong e e adimang, Setshedi (1980:35-38). Cole (1955:123) o kaela fa maadingwa mo Setswaneng e le mafoko a a tsewang mo Seesimaneng le Seaforikanse. Mafoko a gantsi ke maina fela le madiri a teng. O tswela pele ka go re maina a a thopilweng a tokafadiwa ka melao ya phetogomedumo gore a tswanafadiwe, a feleletse a utlwala jaaka a Setswana. Fa go adimiwa, mangwe a mareo a tsewa a ntse jalo a sa fetole mokwalo, mme bontsintsi jwa maadingwa, bo fetola mokwalo gore o tsamaisane le diphetogomedumo tsa puo e e adimang. Cole (1980:123) o bontsha dikao tse mmalwa tsa maadingwa, sk.:

station	>	**seteišene**
tafel	>	**Lenaneo**
wine	>	**beine**
bicycle	>	**baesekele**
hemp	>	**hempe**

Louwrens (1994:4-5) o tlhalosa leadingwa e le:

> Adoptive is a word that has been taken over from a foreign language and which has been adapted to fit into the sound system and grammar of the borrowing language.

4.3 POPO YA MAFOKO

Popego ya mafoko e bopiwa ka ditsela tse di farologaneng mo Setswaneng. Lefoko mo Setswaneng le bopiwa ka modi le ditlhongwa. Mo maineng, leina le bopiwa ke **tlhogo** le **modi**, leina ***monna*** le bopilwe ka tlhogo **mo-** le modi -**nna**. Madiri a bopiwa ke ditlhogo tsa madiri ***modi*** le **megatla** le **megatlana**. Sekao, **go rekiwa nama** lediri **go rekiwa** le bopilwe ka tlhogo ya modirisogo **go-** modi wa lediri **rek-**, mogatla wa tirwa **-iw-** le mogatlana **-a**. Go na le dikarolo tsa go bopa mafoko ka ditsela tse di farologaneng, e bong:

4.3.1 Katoloso

Katoloso[12] ke mokgwa wa go tsenya ditlhongwa mo lefokong kgotsa go fetola bokao ba lefoko go ya ka melawana ya thutapuo ya puo eo. Mokgwa wa go tsenya dipopi mo moding o ka nna popikatoloso, se se supa fa dipopi di atolosa bokao jwa modi. Pharologano magareng ga katoloso le mafokogotswa ga ise e bonale mo go kgodisang, ka jalo dipuo tse dingwe di dirisa mareo ao a le mabedi go kaela mokgwa o le mongwe. Kosch (2006:86) o kaela gore thutapuo ya koketso e na le tiriso ya popapolelo e bile e bonala e le mo maemong a popapolelo.

Katamba (1993:205) o tlhalosa katoloso e le thutapuo ya go tlhongwafatsa modi wa lefoko ka molao wa popapolelo. Krüger (2006:40) o tlhalosa thutapuo e, e le go tlhongwafatsa. Go tlhongwafatsa ke tsela e ditlhongwa di tsenngwang ka teng mo lefokong go oketsa, kgotsa go fetola bokao jwa lona. Mo lediring go mothofatsa go tsentswe tlhogo ya modirisogo **-go** le mogatla wa lediriletswa **-fal-** le mogatlana **-a** mo lefokong **motho**, go bopa lefoko **go mothofala**. Kosch (2006:84-109) o tlhagisa go le gontsi mo thutong e ya gagwe.

4.3.2 Mafokomatswa

Mafokomatswa[13] ke mokgwa wa go bopa lefoko le le lešwa go tswa mo lefokong le lengwe. Se se ka diragala ka go tsaya lefoko go tswa mo karolong e nngwe ya puo, mme ga bopiwa lefoko e bile la wela mo karolong e nngwe ya puo seo se tlhalosa lereo ‘gotswa’. sk. (4-10), lediri **go natefa** le tswa mo go leina **monate**.

(4-10) monate > go natefa
mo-nate > go-nate-fa
StlhLn3-modi Tlhymdg-modi-MgwLdl

[12] Lereo le mo Setswaneng le itsege e le (go nyamisa/sokamisa) fela ka ntlha ya bokao jwa leina le, lereo katoloso le bonagala le tlhaloganyega mme le le bonolo, mme patlisiso e e tla dirisa lona.
[13] Lereo mafokogotswa le lona ke lereo le thuto e e tla le dumelang go tlhalosa lereo (*derivation*).

Kosch (2006:111) o tlhalosa fa mafokomatswa e le tiragalo e e diragalang go bopa lefoko le lengwe. Mo thutapuong e, ditlhongwa di dirisiwa go oketsa kana go fetola bokao jwa modi o o rileng ka melawana ya popapolelo .

Katamba (1993:205) o tlhalosa mafokomatswa e le mokgwa wa go bopa lefoko le leśwa. Louwrens (1994:50-51) o tlhalosa mafokomatswa e le tsela ya popafoko ya go bopa mafoko a maśwa go tswa mo dikarolong tse dingwe tsa puo. Richards *et al*. (1992:103) o tlhalosa mafokomatswa e le tsela ya go bopa mafoko a maśwa ka go tsenya ditlhongwa tse di rileng. Kosch (2006:114-117) o tlhalosa fa mafokomatswa a ka tswa mo maineng go ya mo madiring (**monate > go natefa**), letlhaodi go ya lediring (**sweu > go sweufala**), go tswa madiring go ya maineng (**go aga > moago)**. Poulos le Louwrens (1994:48-53, 125-127), Kosch (2006:111-129) ba tlhalosa 'mafokomatswa' ka botlalo ba ikaegile ka puo ya Sepedi.

4.3.2.1 Lediriletswa

Lereo **letswa/matswa** le kaela fa go na le sengwe se se tswang mo selong se sengwe kgotsa go gongwe. Mo popegopuong go buiwa fa letswa e le lereo le le bopilweng go tswa mo lereong kgotsa mo karolong nngwe ya puo. Lediriletswa ke lediri le le bopilweng go tswa mo karolong e nngwe ya puo jaaka maina. Leba dikao tse di latelang:

Leina	Modi wa leina	Modi wa madirimatswa	Lediriletswa
motho	-tho	-fal-	mothofatsa
monate	-nate	-f-	-natefa

Lenaneo 4-3: Popego ya madirimatswa

Louwrens 1994:49 o kaela modi wa madirimatswa e le **-fal-** le **-f-** a dirisitswe go bopa madiri go tswa mo maineng. Medi ya madirimatswa e tswa mo maineng. Krüger (2006:195) o tlhalosa fa go bopega ga madirimatswa e le tsela e madiri a bopegang ka teng go tswa mo maineng, go tsenngwa tlhogo ya modirisogo -go e nna tlhogo, e be go tsengwa modi **-fal-** kgotsa **-f-**.

4.3.2.2 Leinaletswa

Leinaletswa ke leina le le bopilweng go tswa mo dikarolong tse dingwe tsa puo. Mo popegong ya one go tsenngwa ditlhongwa mo moding, e ka nna tlhogo kgotsa mogatla. Modi o ke modi o o tswang mo madiring go le gantsi, fela modi o ka tswa mo dikarolong dingwe tsa puo gore di feleletse di bopile mainamatswa. Go dikarolo di le dintsi tse mainamatswa a bopilweng go tswa mo go ona, sk.:

- **Mainamatswamaineng**: ke maina a a bopilweng ka modi wa leina go bopa leina le le rileng.

Sekao: mosadi > bosadi > tshadi

- **Mainamatswadikutung tsa madiri**: ke maina a a bopilweng ka go tlhoma ditlhogo tsa maina moding ya madiri.

  Sekao: ruta > thuto

  roka > moroki

  aga > moagi

- **Mainamatswamatlhaoding**: ke maina a bopilweng ka ditlhogo tsa maina le modi ya matlhaodi.

  Sekao: bogolo

  bokhutshwane

  botala

  bobedi

- **Mainamatswamaemeding:** ke maina a bopilweng ka go tsenya ditlhogo tsa maina mo maemeding.

  Sekao: ena > boena

  tsona > botsona

  nna > bonna

- **Mainamatswamatlhophing**: ke maina a bopilweng ka ditlhogo tsa maina le kutu tsa matlhophi.

  Sekao: bojotlhe

  botsosi/bonosi

  bobotlhe

  bobosi

- **Mainamatswadikutumarui**: ke maina a bopilweng ka go tsenya ditlhogo tsa maina mo kutung tsa marui tse di nang le thuanyirui **-ga**.

  Sekao: ga gagwe > bogagagwe

  ga gago > bogagago

- **Mainamatswamatlhalosing**: ke maina a bopilweng ka go tsenya ditlhogo tsa maina mo dikutung tsa matlhalosi kwa ntle ga go fetola sepe.

  Sekao: godimo > bogodimo

  tlase > letlase/botlase

  teng > mateng/boteng

- **Mainamatswamaetsing:** ke maina a bopilweng ka go tsenya ditlhogo tsa maina mo maetsing.

  Sekao: koe > mokoe

  kor > korwe

  bii bii > lebiibii

Louwrens (1994:53) o tlhalosa mainamatswa e le "*deverbative is a term that refers to a noun which is derived from a verb root*". Se se diragala ka mafokogotswa, e bile se akaretsa go tsenngwa ga tlhogo mo moding. Cole (1955:113-126) ene o tlhalosa mainamatswa jaana; "*the deverbative can be suffixed with -i, -o and they can be formed by simple and derivative verb stems. Deverbative are nouns that are derived from other categories being noun itself, pronoun qualificative stems, verb stems, adverbs, idiophones, and interjections*".

4.3.3 Tswakanyo

Tswakanyo ke tsela ya go bopa mafoko, e e akaretsang go kopanngwa ga medi e mebedi le ditlhongwa tsa teng go neela bokao jo bo rileng. Re na le mainatswako mo Setswaneng a e leng gore a bopilwe ka leina le karolo nngwe ya puo, Louwrens (1994:29). Mo sekaong, (4-11), lereo **mosadimogolo** le tswakantswe ka leina **mosadi** le letlhaodi **mogolo** go dira bokao bo le bongwe jwa gore go buiwa ka motho yo o godileng. Go na le maina a tswakantsweng le marui, sk. **rraago** (4-12), **mmaabo** (4-13).

(4-11) **Mosadimogolo** o dira tee.

mo-sadi	mo-golo	o-dir-a	(ne-)-tee
StlhLn1-modi	StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn9-modi

(4-12) **Rraago** ke ngaka

(-)-rre-	wa	gago	ke	(ne-)-ngaka
StlhLn1a-modi	thyrui	LmdLr	Kptsh	StlhLn9-modi

(4-13) **Mmaabo** ke sebata

(-)-mme-	wa	bona	ke	se-bata
StlhLn1a-modi	thyrui	LmdLr	Kptsh	StlhLn7-modi

Posthumus (1994:34) o tlhalosa tswakanyo e le go bopega ga lereo le lešwa go tswa mo lereong le lengwe kgotsa karolong e nngwe ya puo. Kosch (2006:122) o tlhalosa tswakanyo e le go kopanngwa ga medi kgotsa mareo a mabedi a a feletseng go bopa lereo le lešwa. Krüger (2006:41) o tlhalosa tswakanyo e le tsela e mareo a mabedi a tswakantsweng mmogo go bopa lereo le le lengwe.

Lereo le le kaya go tswakanya ga mafoko kgotsa dikutu di le pedi. Ke ka moo mo Setswaneng re ka le bitsa **tswakanyo**.

4.3.3.1 Leinatswako

Ke maina a a bopilweng ka maina a a kopantsweng le dikarolo dingwe tsa puo. Dikarolopuo tse pedi di a gokagangwa go bopa mainatswako, sk:

- **Leina le leina**: ke fa leina le kopantswe le leina, sekao, molalatladi, lentswetshipi.
- **Leina le letlhaodi**: ke fa leina le kopantswe le letlhaodi, sekao, mosadimogolo, tautona.
- **Leina le lerui**: ke fa leina le kopantswe le lerui, sekao, mmaagwe, rraago.
- **Lediri le letlhalosi**: ke fa lediri le kopantswe le letlhalosi, sekao, sewagodimo, mojamorago, motsamayabosigo.
- **Lediri le leina**: ke fa lediri le kopantswe le leina, sekao, mmusakgotla, moruakgomo.

Cole (1955:117-124) le Poulos le Louwrens (1994:54) ba tlhalosa mainatswako e le maina a a bopilweng ka go kopantshwa le dikarolo dingwe tsa puo, e ka nna maina le maina, maina le

matlhalosi, maina le matlhaodi jj. Louwrens (1994:29) ene o tlhalosa leinatswako e le lereo le le bopilweng go tswa mo lereong kgotsa kutu ya karolo e nngwe ya puo.

4.3.3.2 Poeletso

Setshedi (1980:70) o tlhalosa maboeletsi e le madirimatswa a a bopiwang ka go boeletsa kutu ya lediri. Mo sekaong (4-14), go boeleditswe lediri **go kopa** go gatelela bokao jwa lediri leo, mme gantsi poeletso mo madiring e dirisiwa go nyenyefatsa lediri. Mo maineng go boeletsa go gatelela e bile go tlhatlosa bokao jwa leina, go ka boeletswa leina le feletse kana ga boeletswa modi wa leina. sk (4-15), go boeleditswe modi wa leina **-sadi** go gatelela le go tlhatlosa bokao jwa leina **mosadi**.

(4-14) O rata go **kopakopa** a sa reke.

o-rat-a	go-kop-a-kop-a
Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	Tlhymdg-modi-MgtlLed-modi-MgtlLed
a-sa-rek-e	
Thysdr-Pytsw-modi-MgtlLed	

(4-15) O **mosadisadi**

O	mo-sadi-sadi
Thysdr	stlhLn1-modi-modi

Louwrens (1994:163) o tlhalosa poeletso e le tsela e lefoko kgotsa karolo ya lefoko e boeletswang ka gona go bona bokao jo bo rileng e bile go gatelela se se buiwang kgotsa se se diriwang. Kutu ya lediri e ka boeletswa go gatelela tiro e e diriwang. Posthumus (1993:33) o tlhalosa leboeletsi e le tsela ya go boeletsa, e le tsela e go boeletsa karolo ya lefoko kgotsa lefoko le le feletseng. Dikao:

- go rua > go ruarua
- go aba > go abaaba
- go raga > go ragaraga

4.4 DIKAROLOPUO TSA SETSWANA / MEFUTA YA MAFOKO

Lereo “dikarolopuo” le fetoletswe go tswa mo lereong la Seesimane “*parts of speech*”. Lereo le le kaela dikarolopuo e le mafoko a mefutafuta. Mo lereong setlhopha sa lefoko le ka fetolelwa mme la tlhaloganyega mo Setswaneng e le ditlhopha tsa mafoko, e ka nna gape le dikarolofoko. Ka ditlhopha tsa mafoko, di kaiwa e le dikarolo tse di farologaneng ka maemo, mme fa di tshwana

ka maemo di bewa mo setlhopheng/karolong e le nngwe. Mo bokaong bo, 'setlhopha/ditlhopha' se dirisitswe go kaela pharologano ya mafoko a a welang mo ditlhopheng tse di farologaneng, fela mafoko a a welang mo setlhopheng se le sengwe, a beilwe mo karolong e le nngwe. Dikarolopuo di tlhophilwe ka moo di tlhagelelang ka teng mo polelong, le tiriso ya tsone mo popapolelong. Ka moo re na le tiriso ya dikarolopuo. Tiriso ya dikarolopuo e tla tlhagelela mo karolong e e latelang ya patlisiso e.

Karolopuo ke lereo le le tlhalosang karolo ya mafoko a a kopantsweng ka ditlhopha go ya ka go tshwana, go tshwana ka popego, le ka tlhaloso. Mafoko mangwe le mangwe a wela mo ditlhopheng tse di farologaneng tsa dikarolopuo. Cole (1955:59) o tlhalosa dikarolopuo e le (*parts of speech*) o tswelela ka gore "they are formed by a complete word belonging to certain categories and not formatives". Setshedi (1980), Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:1-196), Cole (1955:59), Poulos le Louwrens (1994:9-10), Krüger (2006:24-26) le Berg (2018:47-102) ba kaela fa go na le mefuta e e latelang ya mafoko:

Setshedi	**Snyman le Mothoagae**	**Cole**	**Poulos le Louwrens**	**Krüger**	**Berg**
Leina	Leina	Noun	Noun	Noun	Noun
Leemedi	Leemeditota	Pronoun	Pronoun	Pronoun	Pronoun
Letlhopi	Lesupi	Adjective	Demonstrative	Verb	Verb
Lesupi	Letlhaodi	Enumerative	Qualificative	Particle	Particle
Lebotsi	Lekgethi	Quantitative	Verb	Conjunction	Conjunction
Letlhaodi	Letlhopi	Possessive	Copulative	Adverb	Adverb
Lerui	Lerui	Relative	Adverb	Interjection	Interjection
Lediri	Lebotsi	Verb	Ideophone		Ideophone
Letlhalosi	Lediri	Copulative	Interjection		
Leetsi	Lethusalediri	Adverb	Conjunction		
Lelatlhelwa	Letlhalosi	Ideophone	Interrogative		
Lekopanyi	Leetsi				
	Lelatlhelwa				
	Lekopanyi				

Lenaneo 4-4: Mefuta ya mafoko/dikarolopuo tsa Setswana

Bakwadi ba bangwe ba ne ba sa farologanye dikarolo le dikarolwana. Ka jalo dikarolwana di ne di tsewa fela jaaka dikarolo. Mo Setswaneng maemedi le madiri a na le dikarolwana.

4.4.1 Leina

Leina ke lereo le le dirisiwang go bitsa motho, kgotsa selo. Maina a bopiwa ka tlhogo le modi. Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:1-2) ba tlhalosa fa leina e le lefoko le le kayang dilo kgotsa selo se o ka se akanyang. Ba tswelela ka gore Setswana se na le mefuta kgotsa ditlhopha tsa maina e leng: Mainatota, mainakakaretso, maina a a lemogiwang ka dirwe tsa mmele, maikutlo le dikakanyo. Leina lengwe le lengwe le wela mo setlhophaina se se rileng. Re na le ditlhopha tsa maina di le masomepedi (20) mo Setswaneng. Ditlhophaina tse di kaya losika, palo le bong. Go tloga mo setlhopheng sa ntlha go fitlha go sa lesomenne (1-14), re na le maina a a tlwaelegileng a a nang le tlhogo le modi. Setlhopha sa lesometlhano (15) ke sa modirisogo, go tloga go 16-20 ke a a kayang lefelo.

Louwrens (1994:126-127), Cole (1955:60), Poulos le Louwrens (1994:11) ba kaya leina e le:

> Noun is a term that is used to refer to a person, thing, or an abstract concept. They continue to say a noun is structurally characterised by a prefix and a root. Nouns are classified into classes; this is according to their prefixes and their meaning. e.g **Mosadi** will belong to noun class 1 because it has prefix **Mo**, **Setlhare** will belong to noun class 7 because it has prefix **Se** of class 7.

4.4.1.1 Ditlhopha tsa maina le ditlhogo tsa tsona

Setlhopha	Setlhophaina	Modi wa leina	Leina	Bokao ba diteng
1	mo-	-sadi	mosadi	Karolo e emetseng maina a batho.
2	ba-	-sadi	basadi	
1a	(-)-	-ntate	ntate	Maina, maina a bogosi, maina a a mothofaditsweng.
2a	bo-	-ntate	bontate	
3	mo-	-sese	mosese	Gantsi ke a e seng a batho, dikarolo tsa mmele, didiriswa, diphologolo, maina a ditlhare le dimela.
4	me-	-sese	mesese	
5	le-	-kau	lekau	Gantsi ke dingwe tsa diphologolo, bontsi jwa dimela, mainagoboka, motho yo sa mo itseng, mafelo.
6	ma-	-kau	makau	
7	se-	-tlhare	setlhare	Gantsi ke dikarolo tsa mmele, maina a dipuo, meetlo, mokgwa, dipuo, dingwe tsa dimela, didiriswa, maina mangwe a batho.
8	di-	-tlhare	ditlhare	
9	(ne)-	-nku	nku	

10	di-	-nku	dinku	Gantsi ke bontsi ba maina a diphologolo, dimela dingwe, dikarolo dingwe tsa mmele, dilo tsa tlhago, mainatota a a kaelang batho ba ba leng mo maemong a botlhokwa.
11	lo-	-gong	logong	Gantsi ke maina a le mmalwa a wela mo setlhopheng se.
10	di-	-gong	dikgong	
14	bo-	-gobe	bogobe	Mainagoboka
6	ma-	-gobe	magobe	
15	go-	-tsamaya	go tsamaya	Modirisogo
16	fa-	-tshe	fatshe	Lefelo
17	go-	-dimo	godimo	
18	mo-	-rago	morago	
19	ga-	-re	gare	
20	(-)-	-tlase	tlase	

Lenaneo 4-5: Ditlhophaina le popego ya maina

Ditlhopha tsa maina di bontsha fa maina a bopilwe mo bongweng le bontsing. Mo leineng **mosadi**, le mo bongweng mo setlhopheng sa (**mo-/ba-**) go kaela gore mo bontsing e nna **basadi**. Setlhopha sa borobong (9) ke setlhopha se se senang tlhogo e e bonalang ka matlho fa lefoko le kwalwa.

4.4.1.2 Mefuta ya maina

- Mainatota ke maina a batho, mafelo, diphologolo le dilo fela jaaka, **mothusi, tlhakong, tau, sekolong, Ditsobotla**.
- Mainakakaretso ke maina a dilo kgotsa batho jaaka, **molemo, mogami, lekau, sesepa**.
- Maina a a lemogiwang ka maikutlo le dikakanyo ke a sa kgoneng go kgomiwa ka seatla jaaka, **nako, ipelo, lorato, botshelo** jj.
- Maina a lemogiwang ka dithwe tsa mmele jaaka monkgo le tatso le kutlo jaaka **botlhofo, borumo, sebodu, botlhoko**.

4.4.1.3 Letlhaodi

Letlhaodi ke karolwana ya leina e e tlhaolang leina mo polelong. Louwrens (1994:3) o tlhalosa letlhaodi e le, lefoko le le tlhaolang selo, maemo kgotsa tiro e leina le buang ka lona. Matlhaodi

ke mafoko a a tlhaolang mafoko a a ka dirisiwang jaaka sediri kgotsa sedirwa mo polelong go ya ka tebego, boleng, palo le mmala, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:27). Sekao, Basimane ba bararo, mo sekaong se go bonagala fa letlhaodi 'bararo' le na le tlhogo ya leina **ba**- le kutu ya letlhaodi **-raro**. Ka jalo ke letlhaodi la palo. Sekao, dikgong tse dikima ga di tuke, tse dikima di tlhaola dikgong, mme di tlhaola go ya ka tebego le bogolo jwa tsona.

Louwrens (1994:3), Poulos le Louwrens (1994:91) ba tlhalosa fa letlhaodi le bopilwe ka tlhogo ya leina le kutu ya letlhaodi. Louwrens (1994:3) o tswelela ka gore letlhaodi ke leina le le botlhokwa kgotsa le le kgethegileng le le eteletsweng pele ke lefoko le le tshwanang le lesupi. Krüger (2013a:127-136) o kaela fa letlhaodi e le karolwana ya leina ka e tlhalosa leina e bile e ka bidiwa "*adjectival noun*". Louwrens (1994:3-4) a re "*Adjectival word groups are categorized by having a qualificative particle and an adjective,*" sk. **banna ba bararo**, **mosetsana yo motelele**, mo sekaong se legokanyi le bonwa morago ga leina e leng **ba**- le **yo-** e be di salwa morago ke letlhaodi.

Setshedi (1980:59) o kaya fa go na le letlhaodi la mmala (le tlhaola selo se se kaiwang ke leina ka mmala wa sona), la palo (le tlhaola dilo tse di kailweng ke leina ka palo) le la popego (le tlhaola popego ya dilo tse di kailweng ke leina). Setshedi (1980:53-62); Lombard, *et al*, (1985:29); Van Wyk, *et al*. (1992:6), Poulos le Louwrens (1994:11ff), ba tlhalosa matlhaodi ka botlalo. Leba dikao mo lenaneong le le lateng:

Letlhaodi la mmala	Letlhaodi la popego	Letlhaodi la palo
mosese o motala	mosimane yo mosesane	dikgomo tse dintsi
batho ba basweu	setlhare se segolo	batho ba bane
kgomo e ntsho	ngwana yo monnye	bana ba babedi

Lenaneo 4-6: Mefuta ya matlhaodi

4.4.2 Leemedi

Leemedi ke karolo ya puo e e dirisiwang go emela leina mo polelong. Setshedi (1980:41) o kaya fa maemedi a na le mefuta e mebedi, e bong **maemeditho** a a emelang batho, le **maemeditota** a a emelang dilo dingwe tse e seng batho. Louwrens (1994:153) le Krüger (2006:127-131) ba kaya e le lereo le le bontshang tumalano le leina gape le ka emelang leina. Cole (1955:127) ke mareo a ikemetseng, e bile ga a a tshwanela go kopanngwa le dithuanyi jaaka dithuanyi di gokangwa e bile ga a kgone go ikemela a le nosi.

4.4.2.1 Mefuta ya Maemedi

4.4.2.1.1 Leemeditho

Leemeditho ke leemedi le le emelang batho. Popego ya leemedi ga e kgone go arogangwa ka dipopi, Setshedi (1980:41). Ke leemedi le le arogantsweng gararo. Le arogantswe ka mmui wa ntlha, mmui wa bobedi le mmui wa boraro. Setshedi (1980:41) o bontsha fa maemedi a, a ema ka tsela e:

	Bongwe	**Bontsi**
Mmui wa ntlha	nna	rona
Mmui wa bobedi	wena	lona
Mmui wa boraro	ena/ene	bona/bone

Lenaneo 4-7: Maemeditho

4.4.2.1.2 Leemeditota

Mosola wa maemeditota ke go gatelela leina kgotsa go le emela mo polelong. Cole (1955:127-128) o kaya e le maemedi a a dirisiwang go gatelela bokao jwa leina e bile a kgona go ikemela a le nosi jaaka sediri kgotsa sedirwa sa polelo. Mo sekaong (4-16), leemedi **tsone** le gatelela gore **ditlhare**. Mo sekaong (4-17) **tsone di maruru**, leemedi **tsone** le emetse thuanyi, fela bokao jwa polelo eo ga bo fetoge ka tsone e le leemedi le le emelang dilo.

(4-16) ditlhare **tsone**

di-tlhare	tsone
StlhLn8-modi	LmdT8

(4-17) **Tsone** di maruru.

tsone	di	ma-ruru.
LmdT8	thysdr8	StlhLn6-modi

4.4.2.1.3 Lesupi

Lesupi ke karolwana ya puo e e supang maemo kgotsa sekgala se mongwe kgotsa sengwe se leng gona. Cole (1955:130) o kaela fa lesupi le dirisiwa go kaela dilo tse di bonalang. Le na le maemo a mararo a kayang fa mmui, mmuisiwa kgotsa mmuiwa a leng teng. Go na le masupi a kemo ya ntlha (4-18), kemo ya bobedi (4-19) le kemo ya boraro (4-20). sk:

Kemo ya ntlha	Kemo ya bobedi	Kemo ya boraro
monna **yo**	monna **yoo**	monna **yole**

Lenaneo 4-8: Kemo ya masupi

(4-18) motho **yo**

mo-tho	yo
StlhLn1-modi	LspK1

(4-18) motho **yoo**

mo-tho	yoo
StlhLn1-modi	LspK2

(4-18) motho **yole**

mo-tho	yole
StlhLn1-modi	LspK3

4.4.2.1.4 Letlhophi

Letlhophi ke lefoko le le tlhophang sediri kgotsa sedirwa mo polelong. Setshedi (1980:45) o kaela fa matlhophi a bopilwe ka thuanyi le kutu **-otlhe** le **-osi**. Mo Setswaneng go na le mefuta e meraro ya matlhophi, e bong matlhophimaakaretsi ke le le akaretsang, mme le bonwa ka modi -**otlhe** (4-19), matlhophimatlhotlholodi ke le le tlhotlhololang le bonwa ka modi -**osi** (4-20), matlhophi a nang le motheo wa mabadi. Cole (1955:154-158) le Krüger (2006:137-139) ba kaya fa go na le matlhophimaakaretsi, matlhophitlhotlholodi, makgethi **-pe** (4-21), maaroganyi **-sele** (4-22) le mabotsi **-fe?** (4-23)

Matlhophi				
maakaretsi	**matlhotlholodi**	**makgethi**	**maaroganyi**	**mabotsi**
-otlhe	-pe	-esi	-sele	-fe?

Lenaneo 4-9: Mefuta ya matllhophi

(4-19) basadi **botlhe** ba ja

ba-sadi	botlhe	ba-j-a
StlhLn2-modi	LtlhLk2	ThySdr2-modi-MgtlLed

(4-20) bona **bosi** ba ja madi

bona	bosi	ba-j-a	ma-di
LmdT2	Lkgth	Thysdr2-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn6-modi

(4-21) batho **bape** ba nwa

ba-tho	bape	ba-nw-a
StlhLn2-modi	LtlhLtlh2	Thysdr2-modi-MgtlLed

(4-22) basadi **basele** ba tsamaya

ba-sadi	basele	ba-tsamay-a
StlhLn2-modi	Lrgnyi2	Thysdr2-modi-MgtlLed

(4-23) O tsamaya le **bafe**?

o	tsamay-a	le	bafe
Thysdr1	modi-MgtlLed	Legkn	LtlhLbts1

4.4.2.1.5 Leemedirui/Leemedithuo

Leemedirui ke leemedi le le nang le kamano magareng ga motho kgotsa sediri le sedirwa sa gagwe. Ke lereo le le kayang kamano e e leng teng magareng ga leruo le morui, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:49-50). Leba sekao (4-24), leemedi **gagwe** ke morui wa **thipa** yone ke leruo, kamano e e bonwa ka tiriso ya thuanyi **ya** fa lerui le ka dirisiwa go bontsha tiisetso kgotsa go gatelela fa le beilwe mo pele ga polelo, mme ga le beilwe mo morago le kaya thuo fela, Setshedi (1980:63-64).

(4-24) Ke thipa **ya gagwe**.

ke	(ne-)-thipa	ya-	gagwe
Kptsh	StlhLn9-modi	LmdLr9	LmdLr

Krüger (2006:145) o tlhalosa maemedirui a na le "*a referential meaning of the owner and the grammatical meaning of person and number that agrees with that of the owner*". Cole (1955:159-170), Poulos le Louwrens (1994:95) bona ba e kaya e le "*possessives*". Ba tswelela ka gore "*the possessives are formed by prefixing the possessive concords to nouns, possessive stems, demonstrative and qualificative pronoun, specific adverbs, participial verbs, and stem* ***-golo***" (Cole, 1955:159). Poulos le Louwrens (1994:81), Cole (1955:159-170) ba tlhagisa maemedirui ka botlalo.

4.4.3 Lediri

Lediri ke karolo ya puo e e tlhalosang tiro e diragalang, e e diragetseng, le e e tla diragalang. Madiri mo Setswaneng a tsere mokwalokatologanyo wa magareng (*disjunctive orthography*) mo e leng gore dipopi tsa madiri di katologane, ga di a kopana, Krüger (2006:12-28); Kosch (2006:3). Sk. (4-25). **Monna o a ja**, lediri mo polelong eo le bopilwe ke thuanyi sediri **o**, popi ya pakajaanong

-a, modi **j-** le mogatlana **-a**. Setswana se na le mefuta e le meraro ya madiri. Madiri a ke madiritota, mathusamadiri le madiri a kopulatifi. Madiritota a na le tsela e a bopiwang ka ona ka mokgwa wa popafoko, go lebelelwa dipopi ka mokgwa o di salanang morago ka ona, le fa mokwalo wa tsona o katologane.

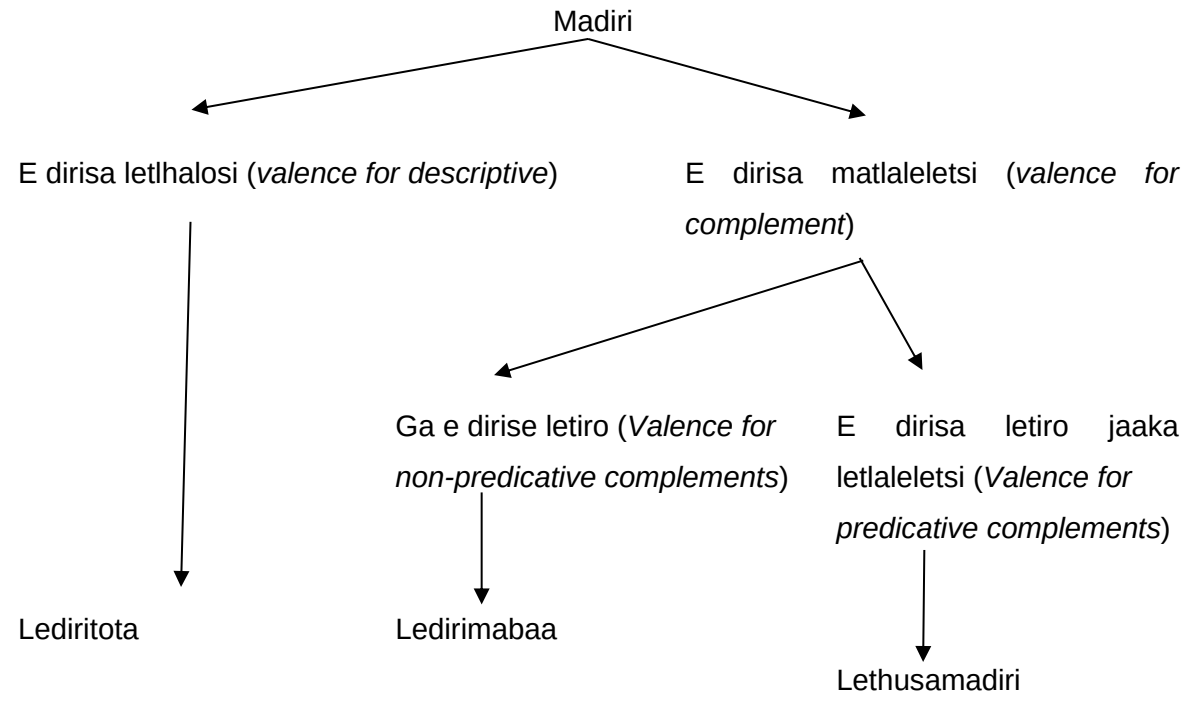
(4-25) Monna **o a ja**.

mo-nna	o-a-j-a
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr1-PyPj-modi-MgtlLed

Bakwadi ba ba farologaneng ba bona madiri ka tsela e e farologaneng. Cole (1955:63) o kaya fa go na le madiritota le madirimabaa mo Setswaneng. O kaya fa pharologano magareng ga tsona e le popego. Madiritota a bopilwe ke modi le ditlhongwa fa madirimabaa a bopilwe ke ditlhogo go tswa mo dikarolong dingwe tsa puo. Louwrens (1994:17) o kaya fa a bona madiritota le madirimabaa mo Setswaneng, mathusamadiri o a tsere jaaka madiri a maemo a kwa tlase ka gore ga a ikemele. Krüger (2006:259-278) o kaya fa madiri mo Setswaneng a na le dikarolwana di le tharo, e leng madiritota, madirimabaa le mathusamadiri.

4.4.3.1 Dikarolwana tsa madiri

Mo Setswaneng go na le dikarolwana di le tharo tsa madiri e bong, **madiritota**, **madirimathusi** le **madirimabaa.**



Sethalo 4-2: Dikarolwana tsa madiri (Krüger, 2006:171)

- **Lediritota**

Ke polelo e e nang le letiro le le ikemetseng le bokao jo bo feletseng, sk. (4-26).

(4-26) Monna o a **tsamaya**.

mo-nna	o-a-tsamay-a
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-Pypkj-modi-MgtlLed

- **Ledirimabaa**

Ke polelo e e nang le lediri la kopulatifi ya tshwantshanyo, yo\ne e bonala ka -ke- mo magareng ga sediri le letlaleletsi le e leng sedirwa, sk. (4-27).

(4-27) Monna **ke** morutabana.

mo-nna	ke	mo-rut-a-ba-ana
StlhLn1-modi	Kptsh	StlhLn1-modi-LnLts-StlhLn2-modi

- **Lethusamadiri**

Ke polelo e e nang le lethusalediri **tsoga** go bontsha gore ke tiragalo e e tla diragalang pele monna a tsamaya, sk. (4-28).

(4-28) Monna **o tsoga** a tsamaya.

mo-nna	o-tsog-a	a-tsamay-a
StlhLn1-modi	Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed

4.4.3.1.1 Lediritota

Setshedi (1980:65) o tlhalosa lediri le bopiwa ka dipopi tse pedi, e bong modi le mogatlana (**tshab- + -a**), Ka ntlha ya dipopi tse, lediri e nna kutu (**tshaba**). Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:65) ba kaya gore dipopi tsotlhe tsa lediri di ageleditswe mo moding wa lediri. Se se bopa kutu ya lediri. Dipopi tse tsa madiri ke ditlhogo, megatla le megatlana. Fa dipopi tse di kopantswe di bopa kutu ya lediritota. Lediritota ke karolo ya puo e tlhalosang tiro e e diragalang. Lediritota le kgona go ikemela le le nosi mo polelong.

Mo popegong ya madiritota go na le dipono tse pedi tse di tlileng ka bakwadi, tse di bontshang selo morago ya dipopi mo pele ga modi le mo morago ga modi wa lediritota. Creissels (2019:3) o bontsha se se kailweng mo lenaneong (4-10) go tswa mo tioring ya Meeusen (1967:108-111) ka ga tshalo morago le tiriso ya dipopi tsa lediri. Meeusen (1967) o bopile tsela e e bontshang mokgwa o megatla e salanang morago ka teng kgotsa e agelanang ka teng mo moding wa lediri. Modi ke tshimologo mo go bopeng lediri (0). Creissels (2019:6) o sala morago mokgwa o o

dirisitsweng ke Meeusen a be a o tsenya mo popegong ya lediri la Setswana. Popego ya lediri la Setswana e ka arabelwa ke papetlana e e tshwanang thata le e e tlhagisitsweng/tlhamilweng ke Meeussen (1967: 108-111).

Krüger (2006:257) le ene o tlhagisa sethalo sa dipopi tsa madiri a Setswana, gore di na le manno kae kgotsa di agelega jang mo moding wa lediri. Sethalo se se sala morago tiori ya ga Meeusen (1967:108-111) mo kagegong ya madiri. Popi nngwe le nngwe e na le manno a yona mo moding wa lediri. Sethalo se se latelang se bontsha maemo a dipopi mo moding wa lediri. Krüger (2006:257) o bontsha sethalo sa gagwe se se bontshang popo ya madiritota le tatelano ya dipopi, go ya ka molao wa popafoko le bokao.

A. Tatelano ya dipopi B. Dipopi tsa lediri C. Tatelano go simolola kwa tlase go(1) go ya kwa godimo go (15)

	Ditlhogo								Ditlhongwa seka-umang					Ditlhongwa umang					Megatlana
A	Modirisogo	Kganetso	Leruanyi la sdr.	Popi ya Kg	Ntlha	Popi ya nako	Leruanyi la sdrw	Modi	Mgtrl. Intr.	Mgtrl	Tlhongwa led.	Mgtrgtrw.	Mgtrk.	Mgtrs.	Mgtrd.	Mgtrn.	Mg Pkph.	Mgtrw	MgtlLed
B	go	ga-	go- go- e-	-se- -sa- -a-	-a- -sa- -ka-	-tla-	-e- -go -i-	modi. Ldrlts Leetsi.	-og- -olog-	-ol- -olol-	-f- -fal-	-êg- -al- -agal- - êsêg- - agan-	-ak-	-is- -y-	-êl- -êts-	-an-	-il-	-w- -iw-	-a -e -ê -ng (Mgrel) -ng (MgMdk)
C	6a	1	6 > 6a	1	2	3	4		15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	5	7	6 (mod.) 1 (kgnts.)

Lenaneo 4-10: Popego ya dipopi mo madiritoteng (Krüger, 2006:257)

- **Ditlhogo tsa madiri**

(i) Popi ya kganetso (ga-)

Ke popi e e ganetsang madiritota, mathusamadiri, le madiri a kopulatifi a tlhagelelang mo modirisopegong. Ke popi e e tlhagelelang mo pele ga thuanyisediri.

Sekao:

(4-29) Banna ba utswa. > Banna **ga** ba utsw**e.**

ba-nna	ba-utsw-a	ba-nna
StlhLn2-modi	Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn2-modi
		ga-ba-utsw-e
		PyKg-Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed

Mo dikaong tse popi ya kganetso e tlile pele ga thuanyisediri **ba** e be e fetola mogatlana wa lediri go nna -**e-**.

(ii) Leruanyi la sediri

Ke popi e e emetseng sediri mo lediring le kaya setlhopha le palo. sk. (4-30). Mo leineng moruti **mo**- o mo setlhophaineng sa ntlha mme thuanyisediri ya setlhopha seo e nna (**o**). sk.(4-31) mo setlhopheng sa bobedi ba (ba) thuanyisediri ya setlhopha seo e nna (**ba**).

(4-30) **Mo**ruti **o** rapelela phuthego.

mo-rut-i	o-rap-el-el-a
StlhLn1-modi-LnLts	Thysdr-modi-MgTrd-Mgtrd-MgtlLed
(ne-)-phutheg-o	
StlhLn9-modi-MgtlLed	

(4-31) **Ba**ruti **ba** rapelela phuthego.

ba-rut-i	ba-rap-el-el-a
StlhLn1-modi-LnLts	Thysdr-modi-MgTrd-Mgtrd-MgtlLed
(ne-)-phutheg-o	
StlhLn9-modi-MgtlLed	

(iii) Popi ya tsweledi (sa-)

Ke popi e e tlhagelelang gantsi morago ga thuanyisediri, e bile e bonagala gantsi mo **modirisokeletsong**. Leba sekao se (4-32):

(4-32) Ke apeile le fa ke **sa** rema dikgong.

ke-apay-il-e		le fa	ke-sa-rem-a
Lmdt-modi-Mgtrd	MgtlLed	Lkpy	thysdr-Pyts-modi-MgtlLed
di-kgong			
StlhLn11-modi			

(iv) Popi ya kganetso (se-)

Ke popi e e tlhagelelang morago ga thuanyisediri, e ganetsa lediritota, lethusalediri le lediri la kopulatifi. Leba sekao se (4-33):

(4-33) Gore ke **se** di reme.

gore	ke-se-di-rem-e	
Lekp	thysdr-Pykg-Thysdrw-modi-MegtlLed	

(v) Popi ya pakatlang (-tla)

Ke popi e e bontshang gore tiro e e diriwang ke lediri e santse e tla diragala mo nakong e e tlang. Leba sekao se (4-34):

(4-34) Dikolo di **tla** bula

di-kolo	di-tla-bul-a
StlhLn8-modi	Thysdrw-Pyptl-modi-MegtlLed

(vi) Leruanyi la sedirwa

Ke popi e e emelang sedirwa mo lediring. Go na le maruanyi a sediri a sa kaeng felo, go na le a setlhopha sa –go, go na le a a kayang felo, e be go nna tlhogwana ya leitiri (**n(i)**) sk. (4-35):

(4-35) Monna o tla **i**kwadisa.

mo-nna	o-tla-i-kwal-is-a
StlhLn1-modi	Thysdr-PyPtl-LrSdr-modi-Mgtrs-MegtlLed

Ke dipopi tse di dirisiwang go ruanya sedirwa sa polelo, e leng leina kgotsa leemedi le lediri, Setshedi (1980:9). sk. (4-36) **Mo** ke thuanyisedirwa e dirisiwa fa setlhopha sa leina e le sa ntlha sa (mo):

(4-36) Bonolo o a **mo** rata.

bo-nolo	o-a-mo-rat-a
StlhLn1a-modi	Thysdr-PyPkj-Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed

- **Dipopi tsa medi ya madiri**

Modi ke popi e e simololang bokao jwa leina jaaka go tlhalositswe kwa godimo (mo tlase ga lereo Modi). Go mefuta e le meraro ya medi, medi ya tota, medi e e tswang mo maetsing le medi e e tswang mo madirimatsweng.

(i) Modi-tota (modi o o ikemetseng)

Ke modi o o tswang mo madiring, jaaka **rat-** mo lediring **go rata**, **its-** mo lefokong **go itsi** le **dir-** mo lefokong **go dira**.

(ii) Modi go tswa mo maetsing

Ke modi o o tswang mo maetsing, o tsenngwa megatla ya madiri, jaaka **fii-** mo go **fifala**, **tete** mo go **tetesela**, **dike-** mo go **dikela**.

(iii) Modi o o tswang maineng

Ke modi o o tswang mo maineng e be o nna madiri, jaaka **boi** mo go **boifa**, -**tlhale** mo **go tlhalefa**.

- **Dipopi tsa Megatla ya madiri**

(i) Mogatlatirolodi

Ke megatla e e fetolang bokao jwa lediri go nna lelatodi. Lediri tlhoma e nna tlhom**oga** le tlhom**ola,** apara e nna ap**ola,** ap**oga**.

Ke ditlhongwa tse di dirang tiro ya go busetsa tiragalo ya lediri kwa morago. E na le mefuta e mebedi, e bong lefeledi (**-og-, -olog-**) le lefeletsa (**-ol-, -olol-**). Leba sk. (4-37):

(4-37) Mosimane o ne a ap**ola** diaparo.

mo-simane	o-ne	a-ap-ol-a
StlhLn1-modi	Thysdr-Lthsled	Pypj-modi-Mgtrld-MegtlLed

(ii) Mogatla tiregi-tirwa

Ke megatla e e kayang gore sediri sa polelo se dumela tiro e e diriwang ke lediri, e direge mo go sona, Setshedi (1980:68). E iponagatsa ka mogatlana **-eg-,** sk. (4-38) e kaela gore mongwe fa a roma bana ga ba gane.

(4-38) Bana ba rom**ega.**

ba-ana	ba-rom-eg-a
StlhLn2-modi	Thysdr-modi-Mgtrw-MegtlLed

(iii) Mogatla tlhongwa lediri

Ke modi o o tswang mo maineng, o dirisiwa go bopa madirimatswa. Mo madirimatsweng e lebelega jaaka megatla (***-f-, -fal-***), sk. **boi** e nna boi**f**a, **sweu** e nna sweu**fal**a. Leba sekao (4-39):

(4-39) Mosetsana o boi**fa** lefifi.

mo-setsana	o-boi-f-a	le-fifi
StlhLn1-modi	Thysdr-modi-Mg-MegLdr	StlhLn5-modi

(iv) Mogatla tiraki

Ke mogatla o o itshupang ka ipoeletso ya mogatla **-aka**, a kaya gore tiro e e diriwang ke madiri e dirwa ka tsenelelo le go feta selekanyo le go dira ka tsenelelo. Lediri **botsa** e nna **botsaka**, (ka kgatelelo) **gata** e nna **gataka** (**-ak**), Setshedi (1980:69-70). Leba sekao (4-40) go kaya fa magodu a ne roba mojako thata go feta selekanyo.

(4-40) Magodu a ne a **robakaka** mojako.

ma-godu	a-ne	a-rob-akak-a
StlhLn6-modi	thysdr-Lthsled	Thysdr-modi-MgTrk-MgtlLed
mo-jako		
StlhLn3-modi		

(v) Mogatla tirisi

Ke megatla e e itsiweng (**-is-, -y-**) **reka** e nna **rekisa**, sk. (4-41):

(4-41) Monna o rek**is**a dijo.

mo-nna	o-rek-is-a	di-j-o
StlhLn1-modi	Thysdr-modi-Mgtrs-MgtlLed	StlhLn8-modi-MgLed

Madiri mangwe ka ntlha ya noko ya bofelo e e rileng a tsaya mogatla **-y-** mo boemong jwa **- is-**. sk. (4-42), lediri **tsena** e nna tsen**y**a:

(4-42) Modiri o tsen**y**a koloi mo karatšheng

mo-dir-i	o-tsen-y-a	(ne-)-koloi
StlhLn1-modi-LnLts	Thysdr-modi-Mgtrs-MgtlLed	StlhLn9-modi
mo	(ne-)-karatšhe-ng	
PyF	StlhLn9-modi-PyF	

(vi) Mogatla tiredi

Ke megatla e e kayang gore sediri se dira tiro e e kaiwang ke lediri mo boemong jwa mongwe kgotsa sengwe, Setshedi (1980:67-68). O ne o itshupa ka mogatlana **-el-**, fela madiri a mangwe a dirisa mogatlana **-ets-** mo boemong jwa mogatlana **-el-** sk. aga > ag**ela**, disa > dis**etsa,** dira > dir**el**a, tlisa > tlis**ets**a. Lebelela sekao (4-43):

(4-43) Monna o dir**el**a mosadi dijo.

mo-nna	o-dir-el-a	mo-sadi
StlhLn1-modi	Thysdr-modi-MgTrd-MgtlLed	StlhLn1-modi
di-j-o		
StlhLn8-modi-MgtlLed		

(vii) Mogatla tirani

Ke megatla e e kayang gore go na le didiri di le pedi di dira tiro e e kaiwang ke lediri la tlholego. Madirimatswa a, a itsewe ka mogatlana **-an-**, Setshedi (1980:68). **Rata** e nna **ratana,** leba sekao (4-44), go raya gore **Pule o rata Tebogo**, mme **Tebogo o rata Pule**.

(4-44) Pule le Tebogo ba rat**an**a.

(-)-Pule	le	(-)-Tebogo	ba-a-rat-an-a
StlhLn1a	Lekp	StlhLn1a-modi	Thysdr-modi-Mgtrn-MgtlLed

(viii) Mogatla wa pakapheti

Ke mogatla o o bonwang ka **-il-**. Lediri **reka** e nna **rekile**, sk. (4-45):

(4-45) Morutabana o rek**il**e dipene maabane.

mo-rut-a-ba-ana		o-rek-il-e	
StlhLn1-modi-MgLed-StlhLn2-modi		Thysdr-modi-Mgpkph-MgtlLed	
di-pene	maabane		
StlhLn8-modi	Ltlhls		

(ix) Mogatla tirwa

Ke megatla e e bonwang ka **-w-**, **-iw-** mo lediring, **aga** e nna **agwa/agiwa**, sk. (4-46):

(4-46) Dijo di rekiwa ke basadi.

di-j-o	di-rek-iw-a		ke
StlhLn8-modi-MgtlLed	Thysdr-modi-Mgtrw-MgtlLed		LdKp
ba-sadi			
StlhLn2-modi			

(x) Megatlana

Ke megatla e e feleletsang lefoko ka mokgwa o o rileng. E tla fa morago ga modi, kgotsa fa morago ga megatla e e tlang fa morago ga modi. Mo madiring re na le mogatlana **-a** o o bonalang fa lediri le le mo tumalanong, le mogatlana **-e** gantsi e bonala fa lediri le le mo kganetsong, sk. (4-47):

(4-47) Mosadi o ratan**a** le Pule. > Mosadi ga a ratan**e** le Pule.

mo-sadi	o-rat-an-a		le	(ne-)-pule
StlhLn1-modi	Thysdr-modi-Mgtrn-MgtlLed		Lkpny	StlhLn9-modi
mo-sadi	ga-a-rat-an-e	le		
StlhLn1-modi	Pykg-Thysdr-modi-Mgtrn-MgtlLed-Lkpny			
(ne-)-pule				
StlhLn9-modi				

Mogatlana wa -**ng** ke mogatla o gantsi o tlang fa morago go bopa madiri a relatifi, kgotsa madiri mo taelong, sk. (4-48) go bonala fa mogatlana e le wa relatifi fa, sk. (4-49) e bonala e le mo taelong:

(4-48) Lekau le le reka**ng**

le-kau	le	le-rek-a-ng
StlhLn6-modi	Thysdr	Lgtlh-modi-MgtlLed-MgtlLed

(4-49) Tsena**ng** mo gae

tsen-a-ng	mo	(le-)-gae
Modi-MgtlLed-MgtlLed	Pyf	StlhLn5-modi

4.4.3.1.2 Madiri a kopulatifi/ Madiri a kopulatifi

Madiri a kopulatifi ke popego ya lediri e e tsenyang bontsi jwa ditlhogo, tse dingwe di tshwana le dithuanyi. Madiri a, a na le mefuta e le meraro:

- **Kopulatifi ya tshwantsho**

Ke mofuta o o tlhagisang kgolagano ya tshwantsho kgotsa kgolagano ya tekatekanyo fa gare ga sediri le letlaleletsi le e leng sedirwa. E dirisa dithuanyisediri tsa mmui le mmuisiwa mo bongweng le mo bontsing jaaka dikamadiri tsa kopulatifi. E bonwa ka sekalediri **ke**, lebelela sekao (4-50).

(4-50) Tau **ke** sebata.

(ne)-tau	ke	se-bata
StlhLn9-modi	Kytsh	StlhLn8-modi

- **Kopulatifi ya kamanyi**

Ke mofuta o o tlhagisang kgolagano fela e dirisa dithuanyi sediri mo lebakeng la mmui, mmuisiwa le mmuiwa. sk(4-51):

(4-51) Tau **e** bogale.

(ne)-tau	e	bo-gale
StlhLn9-modi	Kykm	StlhLn10-modi

- **Kopulatifi ya tsamaelano**

Ke mofuta wa kopulatifi o dirisiwang go kaya kgolagano ya thuo fa gare ga sediri le letlaleletsi, e bonwa ka lediri **na** sk. (4-52):

(4-52) Rona **re na** le dipodi.

Rona	re-na	le	di-podi
LmdT	Thysdr-Kyts	Lgkny	StlhLn8-modi

4.4.3.1.3 Lethusalediri/ ledirilethusi

Lethusalediri ke karolo ya madiri e e tlhagelelang ga mmogo le madiritota go a thusa ka bokao. Ga a kgone go ikemela a le nosi mo polelong. Louwrens (1994:17) o tlhalosa mathusamadiri e le madiri a sa kgoneng go ikemela mo polelong, mme a tlhoka madiritota. Mathusamadiri ke mafoko

a a atolosang bokao jwa madiritota, e bile a tla pele ga madiritota, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:77). Leba sekao (4-53):

(4-53) Monna **o ne** a tsamaya.

mo-nna	o-ne	a-tsamaya-a
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-Lthsldr	Thysdr-modi-MgLed

Mathusamadiri ke madiri a a ka se ikemeleng ka gore ga se matiro a a itekanetseng go ikemela. Ga a nke a dirisiwa a le nosi. Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:77) ba kaela fa go na le mefuta e mebedi ya mathusamadiri, e bong mathusamadiri a tlhago le mathusamadirimatswa. Mathusamadiri a tlhago a ka dirisiwa mmogo le lediritota, mme mathusamadirimatswa a dirisiwa jaaka mathusamadiri. Setswana se dirisa mathusamadiri go bontsha paka, modiriso le bontlha mo polelong.

Mo madiring re na le dintlha tse di latelang tse di bontshang mokgwa o madiri a ka farologanang ka gona TAMP (*tense, aspect, mood and polarity*). Dikarolo tse di fitlhelwa mo madiritota le mo madirimabaa. Se se tlholwa ke dipopi dingwe tsa madiri. Modiriso o bonala mo madiring e bile a na le paka, mokgwatiro le (*polarity*). Dipopi tsa kganetso, thuanyisediri, dipopi tsa pakajaanong, dipopitsweledi le dipopi tsa pakatlang ke dipopi tse di farologanyang madiri mo TAMP. Thuanyisedirwa, leitiri le popi ya lediritsweledi ga di na seabe mo dikarolong tsa TAMP. Mo lenaneong la Krüger (2006:257) e bontsha dipopi tse di fitlhelwang mo TAMP.

4.4.3.2 Modiriso

Modiriso ke mokgwa o lediri le bopegileng ka teng go neela bokao bo bo rileng, Kosch (2006:102). Popego e e bonwa mo dipoping. Leba sekao (4-54) sa **modirisopego**, go bonala fa modirisopego o bonala ka popi **-a** mo tumelong e bile ke popi e bontshang ntlha. Modiriso o, o tsaya popi ya kganetsi **ga-** mo kganetsong, sk (4-55) sa **modirisotaelo** ke modiriso o bontshang taelo mo mothong wa bobedi, e tsaya popi ya kganetso **se-**, le (4-56) sa **modirisotlaleletsi** o o bonalang ka popi **ra-** mo sekaong.

(4-54)

re **a** tsamay**a**		>	**ga** re tsamay**e**
re-a-tsamay-a			ga-re-tsamay-e
Thysdr-pypj-modi-MgtlLed			Pykg-Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed

(4-55)

Tsamaya!	>	**Se** tsamay**e!**
tsamay-a		se-tsamay-e
Modi-MgtlLed		PyKg-modi-MgtlLed

(4-56)	**Ra** tsamaya	>	Ra **se** tsamay**e**
	ra-tsamay-a		ra-se-tsamay-e
	Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed		Thysdr-Pykg-modi-MgtlLed

Mo Setswaneng re na le mediriso e le robedi, e bong **modirisopego, modirisotaelo, modirisotatelano, modirisotlwaelo, modirisokeletso, modirisotlaleletsi, modirisotlhaodi, le modirisogo.**

Setshedi (1980:73-81) o kaela fa go na le mediriso e le merataro (6) mo Setswaneng, e bong, **modirisopego, modirisogo, modirisokeletso, modirisotaelo, modirisokgonego le modirisotlwaelo**. Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:90-129) ba kaela fa go na le mediriso e le thataro mo Setswaneng e bong, **modirisogo, modirisopego, modirisotaelo, modirisokgethi, modirisokeletso, le modirisotlwaelo**.

Cole (1955:235-273) o bona fa go na le mediriso e le metlhano, e bong **modirisotaelo, modirisopego, modirisopego, modirisokeletso le modirisokgeti**, fa Krüger (2006:193) ene a bona modiriso e le robedi mo Setswaneng e bong **modirisogo, modirisopego, modirisotaelo, modirisokgethi, modirisokeletso, modirisotlwaelo**. Poulos le Louwrens (1994:192-243) le bona ba bona go na le mediriso e le robedi mo Sepedi e bong **modirisogo, modirisopego, modirisotaelo, modirisokgethi, modirisokeletso, modirisotlwaelo.** .

4.4.3.3 Mokgwatiro

Mokgwatiro ke karolo ya popegopuo e e lebanang le mokgwa o lediri le tlhalosiwang ka teng, e lebeletse nako, poeletso, tlwaelo le tiragalo. E bonala ka dipopi tse (**sa, tlo, ka**), Kosch (2006:100); Sara *et al*. (2002:11). Louwrens (1994:13-14) o tlhalosa mokgwatiro o amana le bokao jo bo tlisitsweng ke lediri, ka lediri le tlhalosa fa tiro e fedile kgotsa e tswelela. Poulos le Louwrens (1994:278-288), Lombard *et al*. (1985:141-142) ba tlhalosa mokgwatiro mo puong ya Sepedi, sk. (4-57) se bontsha popi ya mokgwatiro ya tsweledi **sa-**.

(4-57) Basimane ba **sa** kwala teko

ba-simane	ba-sa-kwal-a	(ne)-teko
StlhLn2-modi	thysdr-PyMt-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn9-modi

4.4.3.4 Paka

Paka ke mokgwa wa go bua nako e e leng gore tiragalo e diragetse ka yona. Mediriso e le meraro e na le dipaka. Berg (2018:61) o kaela fa mediriso e e nang le dipaka e le **modirisopego**, **modirisokeletso** le **modiriso wa relatifi**. Mo Setswaneng re na le mefuta e le mebedi e

arologanyang dipaka. Re na le dipakatota le dipaka tsa relatifi tse di akaretsang dipopi tsa mathusamadiri, Berg (2018:61-64). Mo dipakatota re fitlhela dipaka tse **pakajaanong, pakatlang le pakapheti**, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:96-99; Berg (2018: 61-26). Mo dipakeng tsa relatifi go fitlhelwa **pakapheti ya relatifi** le **pakatlang ya relatifi**. Kosch (2006:99) o tlhagisa fa paka e bua ka nako e e leng gore tiro e diragetse ka yona. Louwrens (1994:196-197) o tlhagisa paka e le "*the structural realisation of logical time distinction in the form of the verb'*. Go na le *'absolute' le 'relative' tense. Absolute tense refers to action that happens in the present moment and include, past tense, present tense, and future tense*, Pretorius (1997:162); Berg (2018:61).

4.4.3.4.1 Dipakatota

- **Pakajaanong**

Pakajaanong ke paka e e tlhagisang tiragalo e e diragalang jaanong, Mo sekaong (4-58)**,** go bonagala fa polelo ya pakajaanong e bopilwe ka thuanyisediri le lediri le le felelang ka **-a-**.

(4-58) Malome **o** sega lotlhak**a**

(-)-malome	o-seg-a	lo-tlhaka
StlhLn1a-modi	Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn11-modi

- **Pakapheti**

Pakapheti ke paka e e tlhagisang tiragalo e e fetileng, kgotsa e e weditsweng, sk. (4-59) ke polelo e e kaya gore tiro e weditswe, go dirisitswe lediri le na le mogatlana wa pakapheti **-il-**.

(4-59) Rre o seg**il**e ditlhare.

(-)-rre	o-seg-il-e	di-tlhare
StlhnLn1a	Thysdr-modi-pypph-MgtlLed	StlhLn8-modi

- **Pakatlang**

Pakatlang ke paka e e tlhagisang tiragalo e e santse e tla diragala, sk (4-60), go kaya fa tiro e tla diragala mo nakong e e tlang. Se se bonagala ka lethusalediri **-tl-**.

(4-60) Mosimane o **tla** sega ditlhare

mo-simane	o-tla-seg-a	di-tlhare
StlhLn1-modi	Thysdr-PyPktl-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn8-modi

4.4.3.4.2 Dipaka tsa relatifi

- **Relatifi ya pakapheti**

Ke paka e e bontshang gore tiragalo e setse e fetile, Nurse (2008:120), sk. (4-61), go kaya fa tiro e setse e diragetse. Ke paka e bonwang ka lethusalediri **ne-**.

(4-61) Mosimane o **ne** a sega ditlhare

mo-simane	o-ne	a-seg-a
StlhLn1-modi	Thysdr-Lthsldr	Thysdr-modi-mogatlana
di-tlhare		
StlhLn8-modi		

- **Relatifi ya pakatlang**

Ke paka ya relatifi e bontshang nako e e tla tlang, sk. (4-62) polelo e, e bontsha fa tiragalo e tla diragala mo nakong e e tlang. E bonwa ka lethusalediri **-tlabo**.

(4-62) re **tlabo** re tsamaya ka koloi

re-tlabo	re-tsamay-a	ka	(ne-)-koloi
Thysdr-Lthsldr	Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	lgkny	StlhLn9-modi

4.4.3.5 Phapaano

Ke mokgwa o o dirang gore lediri le nne mo maemong a go gana, kgotsa le nne mo maemong a go nna mo tumelong. Mo Setswaneng re na le popi di le tharo tsa kganetso. Dipopi tse ke (**ga, se, sa, a**), tsone di tla mo pele ga lediri e be di fetola mogatlana wa lediri go ***-e-***.

4.4.3.5.1 Popi ya kganetso **ga**

Popi e e tlhagelela mo pele ga lediri go le ganetsa mme mogatlana wa lediri o fetoga go nna -e.

(4-63) Ntate **ga** a j**e**.

(-)-ntate	ga-a-j-e
StlhLn1a-modi	Pykg-thysdr-modi-MgtlLed

4.4.3.5.2 Popi ya kganetso **sa**

Popi e ya kganetso e tlhagelela mo modirisogo, e tla fa magareng a tlhogo le modi wa lediri. Mogatlana wa lediri o fetoga go nna -e e e leng mogatlana wa kganetso.

(4-64) Go **sa** rek**e**

go	sa-rek-e
TlhyMdg	Pykg-modi-MgtlLed

4.4.3.5.3 Popi ya kganetso se

Popi e ya kganetso gantsi e bonala mo modirisotaelong. Ke popi e e bonalang fa pele ga modi wa lediri, mme mogatlana o fetoga go nna mo kganetsong -e.

(4-65) **Se** rob**e** mojako

se-rob-e	mo-jako
Pykg-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn3-modi

4.4.3.5.4 Popi ya kganetso **a**

Popi e e tlhagelela morago ga popi ya kganetso ga, mme mogatlana wa lediri ga o fetoge.

(4-66) Lekau ga le **a** reka.

le-kau	ga	le	a-rek-a
StlhLn5-modi	Pykg	thysdr	Pykg-modi-MgtlLed

Kosch (2006:106) ke popi ya thutapuo ya koketso e e bontshang tumalano kgotsa kganetso mo lediring. Phapaano e kgona go tlhalosiwa kgotsa go bitswa '*actuality*' ka gore lereo leo le tlhalosa gore a maemo a lediri a mo tumelong kgotsa kganetsong, Louwrens (1994:2).

4.4.4 Letlhalosi

Letlhalosi ke karolopuo e e tlhalosang se se dirwang ke lediri mo polelong. E tlhalosa gore se dirwa jang, kae kgotsa leng. Mo Setswaneng go na le mefuta e meraro ya matlhalosi, matlhalosi a **felo**, matlhalosi a **nako** le matlhalosi a **mokgwa**. Mo matlhalosing a nako re na le matlhalositota a nako, jaaka **jaanong, kgale, maabane**, e be re nna le matlhalosimatswa a nako jaaka **ka** metlha, **mo** nako**ng**. Matlhalosi a mokgwa re na le matlhalositota a mokgwa jaaka, **jang, tota, ruri** jj. Matlhalosimatswa a mokgwa.

Matlhalosi a felo	Matlhalosi a nako	Matlhalosi a mokgwa
Barutwana ba ile **sekolong**.	**Ka metlha** rona re tsoga phakela.	**Ruri** ke mo rata **thata**.

Lenaneo 4-11: Mefuta ya Matlhalosi

Poulos le Louwrens (1994:327) ba re, matlhalosi a neela tshedimosetso ka ga tiro e lediri le e dirang. Ba tswelela ka gore matlhalosi a kaela gore tiro ya lediri e diragala jang, kae, goreng le leng. Cole (1955:64) o tlhalosa letlhalosi e le lefoko le le tlhalosang sediri sa polelo kgotsa e tlhaola leina go ya ka mokgwa, felo le nako. Louwrens (1994:5) a re letlhalosi ke lefoko le le tsenyang tshedimosetso mo bokaong jo bo neelwang ke lediri. Krüger (2006:161-163) o kaela fa matlhalosi a ka arogangwa gararo, go na le matlhalosi a tlwaelo **keng, kae, jaana**, matlhalosimatswa a tswa mo moding ya matlhaodi **ntsi=gantsi, bedi=gabedi, tau=sekatau, motho=sekamotho**, le matlhalosi a makopanyi **mosimane o ja thata. Fela ga a kgore.**

4.4.5 Legokanyi

Ka melawana ya popapolelo magokanyi a bontsha e le lefoko le le ikemetseng mo polelong, a dira jaaka tlhogo tse di selwang morago ke letlaleletsi. Crystal (1991:251-252) o tlhalosa legokanyi e le "*an invariable item with grammatical function, especially one which does not readily fit into a standard classification of parts of speech*". Louwrens (1994:133) o tlhalosa gore magokanyi ke karolo ya dikarolo tsa puong ya Sepedi, ka gore e na le ditshwanelo tsotlhe tse dikarolopuo e di lebileng go tswa mo lefokong. Krüger (2006:151) o tlhalosa magokanyi e le "*particles have a syntactic relation; therefore, they indicate a specific relation between a semantic content of their complements and the relevant semantic content of the immediate members*". Berg (2018:96) o kaela fa legokanyitlhaodi le legokanyirui di dumalana le sediri sa polelo mo tirisong ya ona. Magokanyi a na le mefuta e e latelang:

4.4.5.1 Legokanyitlhaodi

Ke legokanyi le le dumalanang le sediri se se mo polelong. Le tshwana le legokanyirui ka le one a dumalana le sediri sa polelo. sk (4-67)

(4-67) Batho **ba** bantsi

ba-tho	ba	ba-ntsi
StlhLn2-modi	Legtlh2	StlhLn2-modi

4.4.5.2 Legokanyirui

Ke legokanyi le le kayang thuo, lona le bopilwe ka thuanyisediri le modi wa lerui -a, sk. (4-68)

(4-68) Dijo **tsa** mme.

di-j-o	tsa	(-)-mme
StlhLn8-modi-MgtlLed	Legrui	StlhLn1a-modi

4.4.5.3 Legokanyitirisi

Ke legokanyi le le bontshang gore sediri sa polelo se dirisa eng go phethagatsa tiro e e rileng. Le bonwa ka **-ka-**, sk.(4-69)

(4-69) Makau a rema **ka** selepe.

ma-kau	a-rem-a	ka	se-lepe
StlhLn6-modi	Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	Legtrs	StlhLn7-modi

4.4.5.4 Legokanyifelo

Ke legokanyi le le kayang felo, o ne a bonwa ka (fa, mo, kwa, ka go ga) go ya ka tiriso ya ona, Berg (2018:97-98). Magokanyi **go le** a dirisiwa go mothofatsa felo, fa legokanyi **go** le kaya lefelo e le motho fa legokanyi **ga** le kaya lefelo e le la motho. Magokanyi **fa**, **kwa**, le **mo**, mo polelong a kaya lefelo, sk. (4-70) legokanyi ***fa***, sk (4-71) legokanyi ***mo***, sk (4-72)***kwa***, sk (4-73) legokanyi **ka**, sk (4-74) sk legokanyi go, sk (4-75) legokanyi **ga**:

(4-70) **fa** yunivesithing

fa	(ne)-yunivesithi-ing
Legf	StlhLn9-university-Legf

(4-71) **mo** ntlong

mo	(ne)-ntlo-ing
Legf	StlhLn9-modi-Legf

(4-72) **kwa** motseng

kwa	mo-tse-ing
Legf	StlhLn3-modi-Legf

(4-73) **ka** motse

ka	mo-tse
Legf	StlhLn3-modi

(4-74) **go** malome

go	(-)-malome
Legf	StlhLn1a-modi

(4-75) **ga** malome

ga	(-)-malome
Legf	StlhLn1a-modi

4.4.5.5 Legokanyikamano

Ke legokanyi le le tlhalosang kamano magareng ga sediri le sedirwa mo polelong, le bonwa ka **le** sk. (4-76)

(4-76) Monna o tsamaya **le** ntšwa.

mo-nna	o-tsamay-a	le	(ne)-ntšwa
StlhLn1-modi	Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	legkmn	StlhLn9-modi

4.4.5.6 Legokanyitshwantsho

Ke legokanyi le le bontshang tshwantshanyo magareng ga sediri le tlhalosi. Le bonwa ka **jaaka** sk. (4-77).

(4-77) O bua **jaaka** mosadi

o-bu-a	jaaka	mo-sadi
Thysdr-modiMgtlLed	legtsh	StlhLn1-modi

4.4.5.7 Legokanyipotso

Ke legokanyi le le botsang, e bile le bonwa ka **A** mo pele ga polelo, sk. (4-78)

(4-78) **A** bana ba jele ?

A	ba-ana	ba-j-el-e
Legpts	StlhLn2-modi	Thysdr-modi-Mgtrd-MgtlLed

4.4.6 Lekopanyi

Lekopanyi ke setlhopha sa lefoko se se dirisiwang go kopanya le go tlhagisa dipolelo, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:194-196). Go na le makopanyi a a tlhagisang dipolelo, le a a kopanyang dipolelo. Makopanyi a a tlhagisang dipolelo a simolola mo ntlheng ya dipolelo jaaka ‘e kete’ mo sekaong ‘**E kete** motorokara o senyegile’. Makopanyi a a kopanyang dipolelo a bonwa mo magareng ga dipolelo di le pedi jaaka, ‘e kete’ mo ‘Mosadi yole **e kete** o utlwa tsotlhe’.

Cole (1955:64) o tlhalosa lekopanyi e le lefoko le le dirisiwang go simolola kgotsa go kopanya mafoko, polelwana le dipolelo mo Setswaneng. Mo polelong ‘ke tla mmitsa **fa** a goroga’, lekopanyi **fa-** le kopanya polelo ‘ke tla mmitsa’ le polelwana ‘a goroga’.

Louwrens (1994:32) o tlhalosa lekopanyi e le lefoko le le dirisiwang go kopanya dipolelo tse pedi. O tswelela ka gore makopanyi a mafoko a kopanya dipolelo fa magokanyi a kopanya mafoko kgotsa setlhopha sa mafoko.

Krüger (2006:153) o kaela fa magokanyi e le "*lexical items that acts as introductory member of subordinate sentences and co-ordinate sentences*". O kaela gore go na le makopanyi a a latelang, **fa, le fa, etswa, jaaka, bo, mme, ka, le mororo, gore, e kete, e bile, e sa le,** lebelela sekao:

Fa ba sena go baakanya koloi ba welawela

Le fa a sa tla ka nako, go siame

Jaaka re ne re tsoma, re bone dikhudu

Ke tla mmitsa **mme** o tla araba

Re palelwa ke go tsamaya **ka** re diegile mo tseleng

Re ne ra boela gae **le mororo** pula e ntse ena

Ga ke itse **gore** a **mme** o tla goroga

Selo se **e kete** ke sepoko

O ne a utswa **e bile** o tshwerwe

E sa le maabane ga ke ise ke mmone

4.4.7 Leetsi

Leetsi ke karolo ya puo e e tlhalosang tiro e motho a e itemogelang ka dirwe tsotlhe tsa kutlo, Mokakale (2008:261). A dirisiwa gantsi mo dikanelong, e bile di tsamaelana le puo ya mabogo le tebego ya sefatlhego, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:140-141). Mo Setswaneng re na le **maetsi a a tlhalosang modumo, maetsi a a tlhalosang mmala, maetsi a a tlhalosang monkgo le maetsi a a tlhalosang tiragalo**.

Modumo	**Mmala**	**Monkgo**	**Tiragalo**
Ga thunya ga re **thwaa**!	Letsatsi la tlhaba le re **hubee!**	Ga nkga ga re **phuu!**	Ba mo tlhaba mme madi a re **phophopho!**

Lenaneo 4-12: Mefuta ya maetsi

Louwrens (1994:79) a re leetsi ke lefoko le le tlhalosang maemo, e ka nna go tlhalosa modumo, mmala, monkgo, tatso, maikutlo le seemo. Cole (1955:64) o tlhalosa fa leetsi e le lefoko le le tlhalosang letlhalosi ka go dirisa modumo, mmala, maemo, tiro, kgatelelo. Poulos le Louwrens (1994:343-349) bone ba tlhagisa leetsi le dirisiwa go bontsha maikutlo a mmui a batlang go a bontsha e leng modumo, monkgo le tse dingwe. Se se bontshwa ka letshwao la kgakgamalo.

4.4.8 Lelatlhelwa/Tatlhelwa

Lelatlhelwa ke lefoko la tsiboso. Le dirisiwa gantsi mo dipolelong tsa lefoko le le lengwe, go bontsha maikutlo tumelo kgotsa kganetso, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:188). Ke karolopuo e e tlhalosang tiragalo ka tsela ya tiragatso, Mokakale (2008:275). Mo Setswaneng go na le **malatlhelwa a tlholego, malatlhelwa a a ngokang theetso, malatlhelwa a taelo le malatlhelwa a tlwaelo**. Leba dikao tse di latelang:

A tlholego	**A ngokang theetso**	**A taelo**	**A tlwaelo**
Ee, Nnyaa, heela!	Wena! Motloung!	Tshameka! Di je!	Robalang sentle!

Lenaneo 4-13: Mefuta ya malatlhelwa

Krüger (2006:165), Louwrens (1994:87-88) le Cole (1955:64-65) ba dumalana fa lelatlhelwa e le "*Interjections are also referred to as 'exclamations' have the semantic value of expressing human feelings, sensations to a place where they can be a wide variety*". Poulos le Louwrens (1994:361) ba bontsha fa lelatlhelwa le ka dirisiwa go kgaotsa dikgang tsa batho ba le babedi. Cole (1955:64) o kaela fa go na le mefuta e le meraro ya malatlhelwa, ***Nnyaa! Achuu!*** "*vocative forms*" ***Mosimane! Wena!*** tse di bonwang mo madiring, mo maemeding le mo taelong jaaka ***taboga!***

4.5 KONOSETSO

Kgaolo e e simolotse ka go lebelela mareo a a tlhagelelang mo lekaleng la popafoko, mme a rutiwa mo dithutong tsa popafoko ya Setswana. Popafoko ke lekala la thutapuo le le ikaegileng ka go tlhalosa popego ya mafoko go tswa mo dipoping. Mo kgaolong e, mareo a tlhalositswe go ya ka mokgwa o a bopang mafoko ka one. Kgaolo e, e simolotse ka go tlhalosa mefuta ya dipopi, mme ya tswelela ka go tlhalosa popego ya mafoko. Mafoko a Setswana a bopilwe ka ditsela tse di farologaneng e bong, tsela ya go atolosa, ya go bopa mafoko go tswa mo karolong dingwe tsa puo, go tswakanya, le go boeletsa. Ditsela tse di tlhalositswe ka botlalo kwa godingwana. Kgaolo e e feleletsa ka go neela ditlhaloso ka ga mefuta ya mafoko a Setswana ka dikao tse di maleba. Ditlhaloso tse di salana morago go ya ka mokgwa o dithuto tsa popafoko di salanang morago ka gona.

KGAOLO 5 MAREO A POPAPOLELO

5.1 MATSENO

Mo Setswaneng, mefuta ya mafoko e bopa dipolelo le dipolelwana, Setshedi (1980:97). Mafoko a Setswana one a bopilwe ke dipopi. Thuto ya dipopi tsa mafoko e wela mo lekaleng la popafoko, Kosch (2006:2); Katamba (1993:3-5) le Louwrens (1994:115). Mafoko a na le mefuta ya ona, mme mefuta ya mafoko e rulagantswe ka ditlhopha go ya ka tiriso, popego le bokao jwa mafoko, Louwrens (1994:213). Mefuta e ya mafoko e dirisiwa go bopa dipolelo le dipolelwana, mme dipolelo tse di arogantswe ka mefuta e meraro, e bong polelonolo, polelopate le polelotswako, Setshedi (1980:97).

Maikaelelo a kgaolo e ke go sekaseka mareo a a welang fa tlase ga lekala la popapolelo ya Setswana. Kgaolo e e tla simolola e tlhalosa ka boripana gore popapolelo ke eng mme ya tswelela ka go tlhalosa mefuta ya mafoko a a fitlhelwang mo Setswaneng ga mmogo le tiriso ya one mo polelong. Tiriso ya mafoko mo dipolelong e tla tlhalosiwa ka botlalo, mme dikao di tla neelwa. Kagego ya ditlhopha tsa mafoko le dikapolelwana ka dikao tse di maleba mme kgaolo e tla khutla ka go neela ditlhaloso tsa mefuta ya dipolelo tsa Setswana ka dikao.

5.2 POPAPOLELO KE ENG?

Louwrens (1994:193-194) o tlhalosa popapolelo e le thuto ya go bopa dipolelo ka mokgwa wa go kopanya mafoko, le melawana e e laolang tatelano eo ya mafoko. Machobane (2010:2) o tlhalosa popapolelo e le thuto ka ga popego ya dipolelo le melao e e laolang popego ya popapolelo. Watters (2000:194) ene o tlhalosa gore popapolelo ke thuto e e lebeletseng mafoko le dipopi gore di kopana jang go bopa polelo e e feletseng e e nang le bokao.

Popapolelo ke nngwe ya makala a thutapuo e e lebeletseng dithuto ka go bopa dipolelo, dipolelwana le ditlhopha tsa mafoko o dirisa mefuta ya mafoko, mme se se laolwa ke melao ya popapolelo. Popapolelo e akaretsa thuto ka ga melao e e laolang mokgwa o mafoko a kopanngwang ka teng go tlhama polelo e e feletseng e e nang le bokao. Thuto e e amaneng le tatelano ya mafoko go bopa polelo ke thaepoloji (*typology),* Kosch (1991:102). Go ya ka thuto e mafoko a salana morago ka tsela e e rileng go neela polelo e e nang le bokao jo bo feletseng, mme tatelano e ya mafoko ke sediri-lediri-sedirwa (SLS). Watters (2000:196) o tlhalosa fa tatelano e e tlwaelegileng ya go bopa polelo mo dipuong tsa bantsho e le *'subject-verb-object'*. Louwrens (1991:13) o tlhalosa popapolelo e le patlisiso ka ga kgolagano ya mafoko kgotsa ditlhopha tsa mafoko go bopa polelo. Louwrens *et al.* (1995:39) ba kaela fa tatelano ya mafoko mo Sepeding, e le *Sediri-letiro-sedirwa*. Setshedi (1980:97) o tlhalosa fa polelo e e tlwaelegileng

ya Setswana e bopiwa ke sediri le letiro, mme polelo ga e kgone go felela fa letiro le se teng. Sediri kana sedirwa e ka nna leina, fa letiro lone e le lediri. Sekao (5-1) mo polelong **mosetsana** ke sediri sa polelo, e be go latela lediri **o reka**, e be go tla sedirwa **dibuka**. Ka jalo polelo e e ka se nne **dibuka mosetsana o reka** ka e sa amogelesege go ya ka melawana ya popapolelo.

(5-1) Mosetsana o reka dibuka.

mo-setsana	o-rek-a	di-buka
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn10-modi

Mo popapolelong go ithutiwa mefuta ya dipolelo le tiriso ya tsone, popego ya dipolelwana le ditlhopha tsa mafoko tse e leng karolo ya go bopa dipolelo. Dipolelo tse, di bopiwa ke mafoko, mme mafoko a, a na le mefuta e e farologaneng. Lefoko ke karolo e e botlhokwa mo popong ya polelo mme ke motheo o o bopang polelo, Robins (1964:193-197). Setswana se na le mefuta ya mafoko, mme mafoko a a na le tiriso e e rileng mo polelong.

5.3 MAFOKO A SETSWANA

Popapolelo e lebile thulaganyo ya mafoko a a bopang polelo. Mafoko a a bopilwe ke dipopi (lb § 4.2), e bile mafoko a, a rulagantswe ka mefuta e e farologaneng, mme mefuta eo ya mafoko e na le dikarolwana tsa yona. Morley (2004:31) o kaela fa lefoko e le karolo e e botlhokwa ya polelo, mme kopano ya mafoko a, e bopa polelo e e rileng e e nang le bokao. Barutapuo ba bolebapopego ba arologanya mafoko go ya ka dipharologano tsa bokao, popego, popapolelo le thutamedumopuo. Mefuta ya mafoko a a latelang ke ona a fitlhelwang mo puong ya Setswana.

5.3.1 Mefuta ya mafoko

Mefuta ya mafoko kgotsa dikarolopuo ke lereo le le tlhalosang mafoko a a rileng, a a welang mo mofuteng o o rileng go ya ka go tshwana ka popego, tiriso le bokao, (Cole, 1955:59; Setshedi, 1980:11-96; Snyman le Mothoagae, 1990:1-196; Louwrens, 1994:213). Poulos le Louwrens (1994:9-10) ba tlhalosa mefuta ya mafoko e le mafoko a a nang le tiriso e e rileng mo polelong, go ya ka tiriso eo, mafoko a a rulagantswe ka dikarolo tsa one. Jaaka go setse go kailwe mo kgaolong ya bone, bakwadi ba ba farologaneng ba bona mefuta ya mafoko ka tsela e farologaneng go ya ka ditiori tse ba di dirisitseng go tlhagisa mefuta eo ya mafoko.

Mo Setswaneng go na le mefuta e le robedi ya mafoko, mme mefuta e mengwe e na le dikarolwana tsa yone. Mefuta e ke **leina** (letlhaodi), **leemedi** (maemeditota, maemeditho, matlhophi, masupi, maemedirui), **lediri** (madiritota, mathusamadiri, madirimabaa), **legokanyi**, **lekopanyi**, **letlhalosi**, **lelatlhelwa** le **leetsi** jaaka go kailwe mo (lb. §4.4).

5.3.1.1 Leina

Leina ke lefoko le le dirisiwang go kaya dilo tse di bonwang ka matlho le tse di gopolwang (lb. §4.4.1). Leina le bopiwa ke ditlhophaina tse di farologaneng le ditlhogo tsa maina, jaaka mo-/ba- Mo polelong leina le dira jaaka sediri kgotsa sedirwa sa polelo, Setshedi (1980:12-13). Fa Snyman le Malope (1990:10) ba tlhalosa gore tiro ya maina ke go dira jaaka sediri le sedirwa sa polelo, mme tiro ya bobedi e le go dira jaaka matlhalosi. Mo sekaong (5-2) leina **monna** mo polelong e e latelang le itshupa e le sediri, mme leina **koloi** le itshupa e le sedirwa sa polelo, mme e le letlaleletsi la legokanyitiriso **ka-**.

(5-2) **Monna** o tsamaya ka **koloi**.

mo-nna	o-tsamay-a	ka	(ne)-koloi
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	legtr	StlhLn9-modi

5.3.1.1.1 Letlhaodi

Letlhaodi ke karolopuo e e tlhaolang leina (lb. §4.4.4) ka jalo ke karolwana ya leina. Matlhaodi ke mafoko a a tlhaolang mafoko a a ka dirisiwang jaaka sediri kgotsa sedirwa mo polelong go ya ka tebego, boleng, palo le mmala, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:27). Sekao (5-3) se bontsha tlhaolo ya mmala wa borotho.

(5-3) Borotho **bo bosweu**.

bo-rotho	bo	bo-sweu
StlhLn14-modi	thysdr	StlhLn14-modi

5.3.1.2 Leemedi

Leemedi ke karolo ya puo e e tlhaolang kgotsa e e emelang leina mo polelong (lb. §4.4.2). Setshedi (1980:41) o kaela fa go na le mefuta e e farologaneng ya maemedi, e bong maemeditho, maemeditota, masupi, matlhophi, maemedirui jaaka go kailwe mo kgaolong tse di fetileng (lb. §4.4.2.1). Setshedi (1980:42-44) o tlhalosa fa tiro ya maemedi e le go nna sediri kana sedirwa sa polelo. Tirokgolo ya leemedi ke go tlhaola leina mo polelong, mme gape le kgona go emela leina jaaka sediri kgotsa sedirwa mo polelong, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:15-17). Sekao (5-4) leemedi **ene** le gatelela leina mosadi mo polelong.

(5-4) Mosadi **ene** o ja borotho.

mo-sadi	ene	o-j-a	bo-rotho
StlhLn1-modi	lmd	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn14-modi

5.3.1.3 Lediri

Lediri ke karolo ya puo e e tlhalosang tiragalo ya sengwe ka nako e e rileng le ka mokgwa o o rileng (lb. §4.4.3). Madiri ke nngwe ya dikarolo tsa puo e e nang le popafoko e e humileng (*morphologically productive*). Madiri a na le dikarolwana tsa mafoko (*lexical categories*) di le tharo, e bong madiritota (lb. §4.4.3.1.1), mathusamadiri (lb. §4.4.3.1.2) le madirimabaa (lb. §4.4.3.1.3), (Setshedi, 1980:65-82; Krüger, 2006:167-278; Berg, 2018:55-93). Setshedi (1980:66) o tlhalosa tiro ya lediri e le letiro mo polelong kana letiro le le tlhaolang leina. Popego ya madiritota e ikaegile ka modi le ditlhongwa (lb § 4.4.3.1.1). Lediri ke mooko wa setlhopha sa letiro, ka jalo le tsewa e le tlhogo e e ka kgonang go tlhalosiwa ke letlaleletsi, sk. (5-5).

(5-5) Mosimane **o gorogile** phakela.

mo-simane	o-gorog-il-e	phakela
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-modi-pypph-MgtlLed	ltlhls

i) Lethusalediri

Lethusalediri ke karolwana ya lediri e e tlhagelelang ga mmogo le lediritota kgotsa le ledirilebaa go le thusa go oketsa bokao mo polelong (lb. §4.4.3.1.3), ka jalo e dira jaaka letlapele, mme lediri le le latelang e be e nna letlaleletsi. Lethusalediri ke karolwana ya lediri e e ikaegileng ka lediritota, Berg (2018:92-93). Sekao (5-6) lethusalediri **o ne** ke letlapele mme le ikaegile ka lediritota **a tsamaya** le e leng letlaleletsi la lona.

(5-6) **O ne** a tsamaya ka koloi.

o-ne	a-tsamay-a	ka	(ne)-koloi
Thysdr-Lthsledr	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	legtrs	StlhLn9-modi

ii) Ledirilebaa

Ledirimabaa le na le dikarolwana di le tharo e bong, madirimabaa a tshwantshanyo, a kamanyi le a tsamaelano (lb. §4.4.3.1.2).

Paka (*tense*), mokgwatiro (*aspect*), phapaano (*polarity*) le modiriso (*mood*) ‘TAMP’, ke dikarolo tsa popegopuo tsa lediri, tse di bontshang popego le bokao jwa lediri ka ditsela tse di farologaneng (lb. §4.4.3.2-4.4.3.5). Lediri le na mediriso e e rileng e e bontshang popego le bokao ya lediri, Setshedi (1980:73-81). Mo medirisong e ya lediri, mediriso e le meraro e na le dipaka le mokgwatiro, fela madiri mo medirisong yotlhe a tlhagelela mo tumelong le mo kganetsong, Berg (2018:57-66). Diponagalo tsa madiri ke tse di latelang;

5.3.1.3.1 Paka

Paka e tlhalosa nako e lediri le diragalang ka yona, e ka nna nako e e fetileng, nako e e tlang kgotsa nako e e diragalang ka ona motsotso oo (lb. § 4.4.3.4), Louwrens (1994:196). Paka e tlhagelela mo medirisong e le meraro, e bong modirisopego, modirisotlaleletsi le modirisotlhaodi.

5.3.1.3.2 Mokgwatiro

Mokgwatiro ke karolo ya popegopuo e e lebanang le mokgwa o lediri le tlhalosiwang ka teng, Kosch (2006:100), mme Louwrens (1994:13-14) o tlhalosa mokgwatiro e le bokao jo bo tlisitsweng ke lediri (lb. § 4.4.3.3). Ka jalo mediriso yotlhe e e nang le dipaka, e na le mokgwatiro.

5.3.1.3.3 Phapaano

Phapaano ke mokgwa o lediri le tlhagelelang ka teng, e ka nna mo tumelong, kgotsa mo kganetsong (lb. § 4.4.3.5), Louwrens (1994:2). Madiri otlhe mo medirisong a tlhagelela mo tumelong le mo kganetsong.

5.3.1.3.4 Mediriso

Modiriso ke mokgwa o lediri le bopegileng ka teng go neela bokao bo bo rileng, Kosch, (2006:102). Mo Setswaneng go na le mediriso e e ikemetseng, le mediriso e e sa ikemelang. Mediriso e meraro, e bong modirisopego, modirisotlaleletsi le modirisotlhaodi e na le dipaka, mme mediriso e e nang le dipaka e na le mokgwatiro, e bile mediriso yotlhe e tlhagelela mo tumelong le mo kganetsong. Mediriso e e fitlhelwang mo Setswaneng ke:

Mediriso e e ikemetseng	**Mediriso e e sa ikemelang**
Modirisopego (*Indicative*)	Modirisotlaleletsi (*Participial*)
Modirisotatelano (*Consecutive*)	Modirisogo (*Iinfinitive*)
Modirisotaelo (*Imperative*)	Modirisokeletso (*Subjunctive*)
Modirisotlwaelo (*Habitual*)	Modirisotlhaodi (*Relative*)

Lenaneo 5-1: Mediriso ya Setswana

A. Modirisopego

Modirisopego ke modiriso o o kayang selo se se begwang kgotsa ke polelo e e begang. Setshedi (1980:73). Modiriso o o kgona go nna mo tumelong le mo kganetsong mme ke polelo e e nang le dipaka, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:96-97). Modirisopego o bonwa ka lediri le dirisiwa go bega tiragalo. Diako (5-7) - (5-9):

Pakajaanong:

(5-7) Malome *o seg**a*** setlhare.

(-)-malome	o-seg-a	se-tlhare
StlhLn1a-modi	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn7-modi

Pakapheti:

(5-8) Malome *o seg**ile*** setlhare.

(-)-malome	o-seg-il-e	se-tlhare
StlhLn1a-modi	thysdr-modi-pypph-MgtlLed	StlhLn7-modi

Pakatlang:

(5-9) Malome *o **tla** sega* setlhare.

(-)-malome	o-tla-seg-a	se-tlhare
StlhLn1a-modi	thysdr-pyptl-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn7-modi

Cole (1955:242-243) o kaela fa modirisopego e le mokgwa o lediri le tlhagelelang ka gona ka nako e e rileng, e ka nna ka nako e e fetileng, e e tlang kgotsa e e diragalang ka motsotso oo. Louwrens (1994:84-85) o tlhalosa modirisopego e le popego ya lediri e e tlhagelelang mo polelong e e ikemetseng. O tlhalosa fa diponagalo tsa modiriso o e le; go dirisiwa ga thuanyisediri, go dirisiwa ga popi ya kganetso **ga-**, le tiriso ya popi ya dipaka. Poulos le Louwrens (1994:206-207) ba tlhalosa modirisopego e le modiriso o o tlhagisang polelo jaaka ntlha, e bile e bonala mo dipakeng (pakajaanong, pakatlang le pakapheti). Krüger (2013b:111-112) o tlhalosa modiriso o, o na le diponagalo tse di latelang; e ka nna polelo e e ikemetseng, le letlaleletsi la makopanyi.

B. Modirisotatelano

Modirisotatelano ke modiriso o o supang tiro e e diragalang e latela tiro nngwe. Sekao (5-10) go ipontsha fa **tsa nwa** metsi e le tiro e e diragetseng morago ga gore dikgomo di goroge.

(5-10) Dikgomo di gorogile kwa nokeng mme ***tsa nwa*** metsi.

di-kgomo	di-gorog-ile	(ne)noka-ing
StlhLn10-modi	thysdr-modi-pypph	StlhLn9-modi-pyf

tsa	nw-a	ma-itse
lgrui	modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn6-modi

Louwrens (1994:36) o tlhalosa modirisotatelano e le modiriso o lediri le neelang bokao morago ga lediri le lengwe mo polelong. Modiriso o, o tlhagelela mo polelong e e ikemetseng. Krüger (2013b:117-119) o tlhalosa fa modiriso o, o bontsha tiro e diragalang morago ga tiro nngwe.

C. Modirisotaelo

Modirisotaelo ke modiriso o o kayang ditaelo le dikopo tse di mo tumelong kana mo kganetsong, mme modiriso o o diragala fela mo pakajaanong, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:105-106). Setshedi o kaya fa lediri mo modirisong o, le dira tiro ya go neela taelo, sediri se laela sedirwa go dira tiro. Sekao (5-11) mo kganetsong go bonala fa go dirisitswe popi ya kganetso **se-**, mme mogatlana wa lediri wa fetoga go nna **-e**.

(5-11) ***Nwa*** metsi! > ***Se nwe*** metsi!

nw-a	ma-itsi	se-nw-e
Modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn6-modi	pykg-modi-MgtlLed
ma-itsi		
StlhLn6-modi		

Cole (1955:239-242) o kaya fa modirisotaelo, e le mokgwa o lediri le tlhagelelang ka gona go bontsha taelo, mme o kaya fa mofuta wa lediri le, o sa tlhoke thuanyisediri. Poulos le Louwrens (1994:192) ba tlhalosa modirisotaelo e le popego ya lediri e e bontshang taelo. Louwrens (1994:80) o kaela fa modirisotaelo e le lediri le le bopegileng ka mokgwa wa go neela taelo. Krüger (2013b:112) o tlhalosa fa modirisotaelo e le modiriso o o bontshang taelo, kana kopo e e bogale, kana go kgalemela le go supetsa. Krüger (2013b:114) o kaela fa tiriso ya modiriso o, e le go nna polelo e e ikemetseng, go nna tlhogo ya matlhalosi, le go nna letlaleletsi la mathusamadiri. Cole (1955:240) le Louwrens (1994:80-81) ba kaya gore fa taelo e kaya batho ba le bantsi go tla bonagala ka mogatlana **-ng** fa morago ga lediri leo, sk. (5-12)

(5-12) *Nwa**ng*** metsi > Se *nwe**ng*** metsi

nw-a-ng	ma-itsi	se-nw-e-ng
Modi-MgtlLed-pybnts	StlhLn6-modi	pykg-modi-MgtlLed
ma-itsi		
StlhLn6-modi		

D. Modirisotlwaelo

Modirisotlwaelo ke modiriso o o kayang gore tiro e e diriwang ke lediri e direga ka metlha. Lediri mo modirisong o le felela ka **-e** mo tumelong le mo kganetsong, sk. (5-13). Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:126-127) ba kaya fa modirisotlwaelo, o kaya ditiro tse di diragalang nako le nako kgotsa tse di diragalang ka tlwaelo. Modirisotlwaelo o tlhagelela gantsi jaaka letlaleletsi la lethusalediri (**tle, ne**), Setshedi (1980:81)

(5-13) Ntate **o a tle a omanye** bana.

(-)-ntate	o-a-tle	a-omany-e
StlhLn1a-modi	thysdr-pypj-pyptl	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed
ba-ana		
StlhLn2-modi		

Krüger (2013b:119-120) o tlhalosa modirisotlwaelo e le modiriso o o bontshang tsela e tiro e diregang ka teng ka metlha mo pakeng ya jaanong le pakapheti. O tswelela ka gore letiro mo polelong le ka dira jaaka polelo e e ikemetseng. Poulos le Louwrens (1994:243-245) ba tlhalosa modirisotlwaelo e le modiriso o o bontshang tiro e diragalang ka metlha e bile o tlhagelela mo tumelong le mo kganetsong. Louwrens (1994:75) o kaya fa lediri le le tlhagelelang mo modirisotlwaelong le tshwana le lediri le le tlhagelelang mo modirisokeletsong fela la modirisotlwaelo le felela ka mogatlana -e, e bile madiri a a farologana ka bokao.

E. Modirisokeletso

Modirisokeletso ke modiriso o o kayang lediri le ikaegile ka le lengwe. Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:116) ba re modirisokeletso “o kaya ditiro tse di ikaegileng ka tse dingwe”. Modiriso o o bopilweng ka dipaka tse pedi, e bong pakajaanong le pakapheti. Setshedi (1980:78-79) o kaya fa lediri la modirisokeletso e le lediri la polelwanakala mme le ikaegile ka polelwanakutu, mme lediri le le felela ka mogatlana **-e**. Sekao (5-14) modirisokeletso o dirisa legokanyi **gore** mme lediri e be le khutla ka mogatlana **-e**.

(5-14) Monna o ruta bana ***gore*** *ba falol****e***.

mo-nna	o-rut-a	ba-ana	gore
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn2-Modi	lekp
ba-falol-e			
thysdr-modi-MgtlLed			

Louwrens (1994:188-189) o tlhalosa fa modirisokeletso e le modiriso o o tlhalosang lebaka le le tlang fa morago ga lekopanyi **gore** mme e ka nna taelothoko (*indirect command*). Krüger (2013b:121-123) o tlhalosa modirisokeletso e le modiriso o tiro e e diragalang, e direga ka lobaka la tiro e nngwe mo polelong.

F. Modirisotlaleletsi

Modirisotlaleletsi ke modiriso o o kayang ditiro tse pedi kgotsa go feta tse di diragalang ka nako e le nngwe, sk (5-15) mo sekaong **bana ba tshameka** ke modiriso o o ikemetseng, fa lediri tshameka e ne e le modirisotlaleletsi mme o sa ikemela, fela ditiragalo tse di diragala ka nako e

nngwe. Ka jalo lediri la ntlha le ikemetse fa lediri la bobedi le ikaegile ka la ntlha. Gantsi modirisotlaleletsi o bonala fa morago ga lekopanyi **fa**.

(5-15) Bana ba tshameka **fa** *pula e na*.

ba-ana	ba-tshamek-a	fa	(ne-)-pula
StlhLn2-Modi	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	lekp	StlhLn9-modi
e-n-a			
thysdr-modi-MgtlLed			

Krüger (2013b:123-125) o kaela fa modirisotlaleletsi e le modiriso o o supang letiro le direga ga mmogo le tiragalo e nngwe. Louwrens (1994:132-133) o kaya fa modirisotlaleletsi e le modiriso o o ka nnang le bokao ba gore tiragalo e direga ka nako e le nngwe, kana tiragalo e direge ka lebaka le le rileng.

G. Modirisotlhaodi

Modirisotlhaodi[14] ke modiriso o o kayang gore letiro le dirisiwa jaaka letlaleletsi la legokanyi, Krüger (2013b:125-126), sk. (5-16). Legokanyi **le** ke letlapele la lediri **le dirang** mo polelong. Ka jalo letiro le la modirisotlhaodi le tlhaola leina **lekau** mo polelong.

(5-16) Lekau **le le dirang** le ja monate.

le-kau	le	le-dir-a-ing	
StlhLn5-modi	legtlh	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed-MgtlLed	
le-j-a		Mo-nate	
thysdr-modi-MgtlLed		StlhLn3-modi	

H. Modirisogo

Modirisogo ke modiriso o o kayang ditiragalo, mme o bopilwe ka tlhogo ya setlhophaina **go-** le lediri le le felelang ka mogatlana -a, Setshedi (1980:76), sk. (5-17). Go itshupa fa modiriso o o tsaya popi ya kganetso **se-** fa o le mo kganetsong

(5-17)

Go tsamaya	>	go **se** tsamay**e**
go-tsamay-a	>	go-se-tsamay-e
Tlhymdrg-modi-MgtlLed		tlhymdrg-pykg-modi-MgtlLed

[14] Relatifi ke setlhopha sa mafoko se se tlhaolang leina, mme e simololwa ke leruanyi la relatifi (Cole 1955:63). Relatifi e e itsiwe jaaka tlhaodi e seng modiriso ka gore tirokgolo ya yona ke go tlhaola leina, e neela tshedimosetso ka ga leina mo polelong (Louwrens, 1994:166-167).

Cole (1955:237-239) o tlhalosa fa modirisogo e le modiriso o o bonwang ka tlhogo **go-** e kopantswe le modi wa lediri go bopa kutu e e feletseng ya lediri. Louwrens (1994:85-86) o tlhalosa modirisogo e le modiriso o o bonwang ka tlhogo **go-** mme o na le diponagalo tsa go nna leina kana lediri go ipontsha fa a dumelana le se Cole a se kaileng. Poulos le Louwrens (1994:197-210) ba kaya fa modirisogo o sa tseye thuanyisediri, fa Krüger (2013b:126-127) a tlhalosa gore bokao ba modirisogo ke go nna letlhalosi, go nna letlaleletsi la ledirilebaa le go nna letlaleletsi la magokanyi. O tlhalosa fa modirisogo o bopilwe ka tlhogo **go-** le mogatla wa lediri **-a**, mme mo kganetsong la tsaya popi **-se-**.

5.3.1.4 Legokanyi

Legokanyi ke lefoko le le ikemetseng mo polelong, le dira jaaka letlapele (*introductory member*) le le salwang morago ke letlaleletsi (*complement*) (lb. §4.4.9). Krüger (2006:147-151), Berg (2018:95-100) ba kaela fa go na le mefuta ya magokanyi e bong legokanyitlhaodi, legokanyirui, legokanyitirisi, legokanyifelo, legokanyikamano, legokanyitshwantsho, le legokanyipotso (lb. §4.4.5) Sekao (5-18) se bontsha legokanyitirisi e leng legokanyi le le bontshang gore sediri sa polelo se dirisa eng go phethagatsa tiro e e rileng. Le bonwa ka -**ka**.

(5-18) Monna o rema **ka** selepe.

mo-nna	o-rem-a	ka
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	Legtrs
se-lepe		
StlhLn7-modi		

5.3.1.5 Lekopanyi

Lekopanyi ke setlhopha sa lefoko se se dirisiwang go kopanya le go tlhagisa dipolelo, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:194-196). Go na le makopanyi a a tlhagisang dipolelo, le a a kopanyang dipolelo (lb. §4.4.8). Sekao (5-19) se bontsha lekopanyi le le tlhagisang kgotsa le simolola polelo. Setshedi (1980:96) o kaya fa tiro ya makopanyi e le go kopanya dipolelo tse pedi gore e nne polelo e le nngwe, sk (5-20), go bonala fa lekopanyi **mme** le kopantsha dipolelo tse pedi tse.

(5-19) **E kete** ntlo e šele.

e-kete	(ne)-ntlo	e-š-a-ile
Lekp	StlhLn9-modi	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed-pypph

(5-20) ke tla mmitsa **mme** o tla araba.

ke-tla-mo-bits-a		mme	o-tla-arab-a
Thysdr-pyptl-thysdrw-modi-MgtlLed	lekp	thysdr-pyptl-modi-MgtlLed	

5.3.1.6 Letlhalosi

Letlhalosi ke lefoko le le tlhalosang se se dirwang ke lediri mo polelong. Le tlhalosa gore se dirwa jang, kae kgotsa leng (lb. §4.4.5). Setshedi (1980:83-86) o tlhalosa tiro ya letlhalosi e le go dira jaaka tlhalosi ya letiro, mme matlhalosi a nako a kgona go dirisiwa jaaka marui. Setswana se na le mefuta e le meraro ya matlhalosi, e bong matlhalosi a felo, matlhalosi a nako le matlhalosi a mokgwa, (Setshedi, 1980:83; Snyman & Mothoagae, 1990:131-137). Sekao (5-21) se bontsha letlhalosi la nako.

(5-21) Re ruta bana **jaanong**.

re-rut-a	ba-ana	jaanong
Thysdrw-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn2-modi	ltlhls

5.3.1.7 Lelatlhelwa

Lelatlhelwa ke lefoko le le dirisiwang gantsi mo dipolelong tsa lefoko le le lengwe, go bontsha maikutlo, tumelo kgotsa kganetso (lb. §4.4.7), Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:188). Ke karolopuo e e tlhalosang tiragalo ka tsela ya tiragatso, mme le dirisetswa go bitsa motho o sa mmitse ka leina, gape le bontsha maikutlo a kgakgamalo. Mo Setswaneng go na le malatlhelwa a **tlholego**, malatlhelwa a a **ngokang theetso**, malatlhelwa **a taelo** le malatlhelwa a **tlwaelo**. Sekao (5-22) se bontsha lelatlhelwa la tlholego le le dirisiwang go bontsha go ngoka theetso.

(5-22) heelang!

heel-a-ng
modi-MgtlLed-MgtlLed

5.3.1.8 Leetsi

Leetsi ke karolo ya puo e e tlhalosang modumo, monkgo, mmala, mokgwa, tebego kgotsa maemo a tiragalo, ka jalo leetsi ke lefoko le le tlhalosang tiro e motho a e itemogelang ka dithwe tsa kutlo, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:140), sk. (5-23) mo sekaong se **tuu** e gatelela seemo sa tidimalo ka gonne fa ba rile tuu, ga go utlwale modumo ope. Setshedi (1980:89-91) o tlhalosa tiro ya leetsi e le go dira jaaka tlhalosi ya letiro le go dira jaaka letiro.

(5-23) Ba didimala ba re **tuu.**

ba-didimal-a	ba-r-e	tuu
Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	thysdr-modi-mgtlLed	Lts

Mefuta e ya mafoko e na le tiriso e e rileng mo polelong jaaka go setse go kailwe kwa tshimologong. Krüger (2013b:27) o kaya fa tiriso ya mafoko e le kgolaganyo ya bokao magareng ga mafoko a a mo setlhopheng sa mafoko kana mo polelong. Tiriso ya mafoko a Setswana e tla tlhalosiwa mo dintlheng tse di latelang.

5.4 TIRISO YA MAFOKO

Tiriso ya mafoko ke bokao magareng ga mafoko a a mo setlhopheng sa mafoko, Krüger, (2013b:27-28). Ditlhopha tsa mafoko di na le tiriso e e rileng mo polelong, mme fa di rulagantswe ka tshwanelo di bopa polelo e e tlwaelegileng, Setshedi (1980:97). Fa o lebelela polelo '**mosadi** yo o tsamaya le ngwana', o ka lemoga gore tiro ya lesupi **yo** le bontsha le tlhaola leina **mosadi** mo setlhopheng seo sa mafoko.

5.4.1 Sediri

Sediri ke lereo le le dirisiwang mo thutapuong go kaya kgotsa go bontsha se se dirang tiro mo polelong e ka nna leina kgotsa leemedi, sk. (5-24). Mo polelong e e fa tlase, **monna** ke sediri, o dira tiro ya go kgweetsa koloi. Mo sekaong (5-25) leemedi **ene** le emela leina **monna** mo polelong. Se ga se fetole gore leemedi ***ene*** le dira jaaka sediri sa polelo.

(5-24) **Monna** o kgweetsa koloi.

mo-nna	o-kgweets-a	(ne)-koloi
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn9-modi

(5-25) **Ene** o kgweetsa koloi

ene	o-kgweets-a	(ne)-koloi
Lmd	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn9-modi

Go ya ka Louwrens (1994:174-175) sediri ke lereo le le dirisiwang go kaela leina le e ka nnang la motho kgotsa selo mo polelong, se se dirang tiro e e tlhalosiwang ke lediri. Krüger (2013a:32) a re, sediri ke nngwe ya tiriso ya dikarolopuo, e e dirang tiro e e supiwang ke lediri, ka jalo sediri se na le kgolagano le letiro ka thuanyisediri. Dalrymple (2001:17-19) o tlhalosa sediri e le leina le le dumalanang le sediri. Morley (2004:97-99) o kaya fa sediri e le leina le le dirang tiro mo sediring, e bile le laola popego ya lediri. Cole (1955:60) o tlhalosa sediri e le lefoko le le kaelang sengwe se se dirang tiro e e kailweng ke lediri.

Go na le mefuta e le mebedi ya didiri, e bong sediri sa popegopuo (*grammatical subject*), le sediri sa bokao (*semantic subject*).

5.4.1.1 Sediri sa popegopuo

Sediri sa popegopuo ke sediri se se dumalanang le lediri, se dirisa thuanyisediri, Louwrens (1991:13-17). Krüger (2013a,:32-33) o tlhalosa fa sediri se se tsamaelana le thuanyisediri go golaganya sediri le letiro mo polelong, sk. (5-26). Popi **-o-** ke thuanyisediri e golaganyang sediri **ngwana** le lediri nwa mo polelong. Gantsi sediri se bonala pele ga lediri.

(5-26) Ngwana **o** nwa metsi.

mo-ana	o-nw-a	ma-itsi
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn6-modi

5.4.1.2 Sediri sa bokao

Louwrens (1991:15) o tlhalosa sediri se, e le leina kgotsa setlhopha sa leina se se buang ka motho kgotsa selo se se leng mo boikarabelong ba go dira tiro e e tlhalosiwang ke lediri, sk. (5-27). Krüger (2013a:32) o tlhalosa sediri se, e le leina le le dirang tiro e e tlhalositsweng ke lediri. Gantsi sediri se bonagala fa morago ga lediri.

(5-27) Metsi a nowa ke **ngwana**.

ma-itsi	a-nw-iw-a	ke
StlhLn6-modi	thysdr-modi-Mgtrw-MgtlLed	kypTsh
mo-ana		
StlhLn1-modi		

5.4.2 Sedirwa

Sedirwa ke seamogedi sa tiragalo mo polelong, sk. (5-28). Go ya ka Richards *et al.* (1992:253) yo o tlhaotsweng ke Louwrens (1994:129) o tlhalosa sedirwa e le leina kgotsa setlhopha sa leina se tiro ya lediri e diragalelang mo go sona. Louwrens (1991:138-139) o tlhalosa sediriwa e le leina le le tlang fa morago ga letiro e bile thuanyi ga e tlhokege magareng ga letiro le sedirwa. Thuanyi e kgona go emela sedirwa mo polelong, sk. (5-29).

(5-28) Modiri o rekile **koloi.**

mo-dir-i	o-rek-il-e
StlhLn3-modi-leitr	thysdr-modi-pypph-MgtlLed
(ne-)-koloi	
StlhLn9-modi	

(5-29) Ngwana o a **di** ja.

mo-ana	o-a-di-j-a
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-pypj-thysdrw-modi-MgtlLed

Sedirwa se kgona go tlhagelela gabedi mo polelong. Polelo e kgona go nna le sedirwatebang (*direct object*) le sedirwathoko (*indirect object*).

5.4.2.1 Sedirwatebang

Sedirwatebang ke sedirwa se se amogelang kgotsa se se lebaneng le tiro e e diriwang ke sediri mo polelong. Krüger (2013a:35) o tlhalosa sedirwatebang e le sedirwa se se amogelang tiragalo. Louwrens (1994:55), Poulos le Louwrens (1994:133) ba tlhalosa sedirwatebang e le sedirwa se se amiwang ke tiro e e diragalang mo lediring. Sekao (5-30) **dijo** ke sedirwa mo polelong se se lebaneng le se se diregang mo lediring **o reka**.

(5-30) Mme o reka **dijo**.

(-)-mme	o-rek-a	di-j-o
StlhLn1a-modi	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn8-modi-Mg

Morley (2004:101) o tlhalosa sedirwatebang e le leina kgotsa setlhopha sa leina se se direlwang tiro ke sedirwa mme se araba potso ya gore sediri se dirile tiro efe.

5.4.2.2 Sedirwathoko

Sedirwathoko ke sedirwa se se sa amegeng, ke se se dirwang ke lediri mo polelong. Krüger (2013a:35) o tlhalosa sedirwathoko e le sedirwa se se sa lebanang le tiro e e dirwang mo lediring, o kaela fa tiragalo e direga ka ntlha ya sona. Poulos le Louwrens (1994:1330) ba tlhalosa sedirwathoko e le sedirwa se se tsayang lediri le le okeditsweng go bontsha fa tiragalo e tla direga e sa leba sedirwa se. Mo sekaong (5-31), lediri **reka** le okeditswe ka mogatla wa tiredi **-el-**, morago sedirwathoko se tla morago ga lediri, e be go latela sedirwatebang kwa bofelong.

(5-31) Mme o rek**el**a **bana** dijo.

(-)-mme	o-rek-el-a	ba-ana
StlhLn1a-modi	thysdr-modi-mgtrd-MgtlLed	StlhLn2-modi
di-j-o		
StlhLn8-modi-Mg		

5.4.3 Letlhaolwa

Letlhaolwa ke lefoko kgotsa setlhopha sa mafoko se se tlhalosiwang kgotsa se se tlhaolwang ke lefoko kgotsa setlhopha sa mafoko se se tlang fa morago ga sona, sk. (5-32). Mo sekaong se, **monna** ke letlhaolwa le le tlhalosiwang ke tlhaodi **yo o dirang**. Tlhaodi e, e na le letlapele **yo** le e leng legokanyi la relatifi, le letlaleletsi **o dirang** le e leng lediri.

(5-32) **Monna** yo o dirang

mo-nna	yo	o-dir-a-ng
StlhLn1-modi	Lrltf	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed-MgtlLed

Louwrens (1994:11) o tlhalosa fa letlhaolwa e le leina le le tlhalosiwang ke lefoko le lengwe, gape leina le, le ka nna teng mo polelong kgotsa la se nne teng. Krüger (2013a:36) ene o tlhalosa letlhaolwa e le lefoko le le tlhaolwang kgotsa le tlhalosiwa ke lefoko kgotsa le tlhaolwa ke tlhaodi.

5.4.4 Tlhaodi

Tlhaodi ke lefoko le le dirang tiro ya go tlhaola lefoko le lengwe kgotsa go oketsa kitso e e rileng ka leina mo polelong, sk. (5-33). Lereo **tse kgolo** ke setlhopha sa mafoko se se tlhaolang leina ditau. Tlhaodi e, e bopilwe ka legokanyitlhaodi **tse** le letlhaodi **kgolo** go tlhaola *ditau* mo polelong. Letlhaodi ke lefoko le le tlhaolang, mme leina le le kayang tiriso ya lona ke tlhaodi, mme seo se baka gore baithuti ba se ke ba tlhaloganya pharologano magareng ga leina le tiriso. Tsweletsopele ka ga letlhaodi e botlhokwa gore baithuti ba tle ba tlhaloganye fa ba ithuta thutapuo ya Setswana.

(5-33) Ditau **tse kgolo** di a lwa.

di-tau	tse	(ne)-kgolo	di-a-lw-a
StlhLn10-modi	lesp	StlhLn9-modi	thysdr-pypj-modi-MgtlLed

Cole (1955:62) o tlhalosa tlhaodi e le lefoko le le tlhaolang mme e bile mo Setswaneng e bonwa ka leruanyi le kutu e e tlhaolang. Tlhaodi ke lereo le le dirisiwang go kaela lefoko kgotsa setlhopha sa mafoko a a tlhaolang leina mo polelong, Louwrens (1994:157-159). Krüger (2013a:36) o tlhalosa tlhaodi e le lefoko le le tlhaolang letlhaolwa, e lebeletse diponagalo le boleng jwa lona.

5.4.5 Tlhalosi

Tlhalosi ke lefoko kana setlhopha sa mafoko se se tlhalosang tiro e e diriwang ke letiro mo polelong ka ditsela tse di farologaneng, e ka nna tlhalosi ya nako, felo kgotsa mokgwa, Cole

(1955:64). Sekao (5-34) letlhalosi **jaanong** le tlhalosa nako e e rileng e tiragalo ya go thusa batho e diregang ka yona. Tirokgolo ya lona ke go tlhalosa, mme se se bontsha se tlhola tlhakatlhakano mo baithuting ba ba ithutang thutapuo ya Setswana. Letlhalosi ke mofuta wa lefoko, fa tlhalosi e le tiriso ya lona.

(5-34) Re thusa batho **jaanong**.

Re-thus-a	ba-tho	jaanong
Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn2-modi	Ltlhs

Krüger (2013a:38-39) o kaya fa tlhalosi e le tiriso ya dikarolopuo e e tlhalosang tiro e e diriwang ke lediri, ledirilebaa kgotsa lethusalediri ka ditsela di le dintsi, e ka nna tlhalosi ya nako, mokgwa, felo, maemo, jj. Louwrens (1994:51) ene o kaya fa tlhalosi e le lereo le le dirisiwang go kaela mafoko a a fanang ka diteng tsa ditiragalo tse di diriwang ke lediri.

5.4.6 Letiro

Letiro ke karolo e e botlhokwa e e tlhalosang tiragalo ee amanang kgotsa e e dirwang ke sediri, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:72-73). Letiro e ka nna lediri kgotsa lediri le sedirwa kgotsa lediri le tlhalosi kana ledirilebaa le letlaleletsi. Kgolagano ya sediri le letiro di direga ka ntlha ya thuanyisediri. Sekao (5-35) **o** ke thuanyisediri mme **o a ja** ke letiro mo polelong.

(5-35) Ngwana **o a ja**.

mo-ana	o-a-j-a
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-pypj-modi-MgtlLed

Cole (1955:63) o tlhalosa letiro e le lefoko kgotsa setlhopha sa mafoko se se bontshang tiragalo e e amang sediri. Louwrens (1994:67) o kaya fa letiro e le karolo e e tlhalosang se se diriwang ke sediri, mme di golagana ka thuanyi. Krüger (2013a) o tlhalosa letiro e le tiriso ya dikarolopuo e e supang tiragalo e e amang sediri, e ka nna setlhopha sa madiri, setlhopha sa madirimabaa, setlhopha sa mathusamadiri mme go sa kgathalesege gore letiro le mo modirisong ofe.

5.4.7 Letlapele

Letlapele ke karolo ya tiriso ya mafoko, e e kayang kgolagano magareng ga letlaleletsi la lona le tiriso nngwe ya mafoko. Letlapele lengwe le lengwe le na le bokao jwa lona. Letlapele le letlaleletsi di ikaegile ka botsona (Krüger, 2013a:37). Letlapele e ka nna legokanyi kana lethusalediri. Mo sekaong (5-36), legokanyitiriso **ka** ke letlapele mme **selepe** ke letlaleletsi. Mo sekaong (5-37) go bontsha fa lethusalediri **o ne** e le letlapele fa lediritota **a taboga** e le letlaleletsi.

(5-36) Monna o rema **ka** selepe.

Mo-nna	o-rem-a	ka	se-lepe
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	legtrs	StlhLn7-modi

(5-37) **o ne a taboga**

o-ne	a-tabog-a
thysdr-lthsled	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed

5.4.8 Letlaleletsi

Letlaleletsi ke tiriso ya lefoko e e leng lefoko le le tlang fa morago ga letlapele, mme le naya bokao bo bo ikgolaganyang le letlapele (Krüger, 2013a:37-38). Mo sekaong (5-38) **selepe** se bontsha e le sengwe se se dirisiwang ke sedirwa go diragatsa tiragalo e e rileng, ka jalo selepe ke letlaleletsi la letlapele **ka**.

(5-38) ka **selepe**

ka	se-lepe
legtrs	StlhLn7-modi

Ditiriso tse tsa mefuta ya mafoko di ka tlhalosiwa e le kgolagano ya bokao magareng ga mafoko a a fitlhelwang mo setlhopheng sa mafoko, Krüger (2013b:27). Ka jalo setlhopha sa mafoko se na le mafoko a le mabedi kgotsa go feta a a dirang jaaka karolo e le nngwe, Louwrens (1994:213-214), fela lefoko lengwe le lengwe le na le tiro ya lona. Go tswa mo tirisong ya mafoko re na le ditlhopha tsa mafoko tse di latelang fa tlase.

5.5 DITLHOPHA TSA MAFOKO

Mo Setswaneng polelo e bopiwa ke mafoko le ditlhopha tsa mafoko, mme ditlhopha tsa mafoko di tlhamiwa ke mafoko. Louwrens (1994:213-214) o tlhalosa setlhopha sa mafoko e le lereo le le tlhalosang setlhopha sengwe le sengwe sa mafoko se se nang le mafoko a mabedi kgotsa go feta, a dira jaaka yuniti. Krüger (2013a:6) o tlhalosa setlhopha sa mafoko e le kopanyo ya mafoko go ya ka bokao le tatelano go bopa yuniti e le nngwe. Mo popegong ya setlhopha sa mafoko, tatelano le bokao ba mafoko e botlhokwa. Mafoko a kopana ka go salana morago go ya ka tiriso le bokao jwa ona mo polelong.

Setlhopha sa mafoko ke kgolagano ya mafoko a a salanang morago go ya ka bokao (semantiki) le tiriso mme go tlhokometswe tlhopho le tatelano ya ona. E ka nna polelo e e ikemetseng ka boyone, kgotsa mafoko a mabedi kgotsa go feta a a welang mo setlhopheng se le sengwe kgotsa

mo karolong e e rileng ya puo. Setlhopha sa mafoko se bopilwe ke letlapele le letlaleletsi. Setlhopha sa mafoko ga se kgone go bopiwa ke lefoko le le lengwe.

Mo Setswaneng go fitlhelwa ditlhopha tsa mafoko tse di latelang;

- Setlhopha sa leina
- Setlhopha sa leemedi
- Setlhopha sa lediri
- Setlhopha sa legokanyi
- Setlhopha sa lekopanyi

5.5.1 Setlhopha sa leina

Setlhopha sa maina se ka tlhalosiwa e le setlhopha se se nang le letlhaolwa le tlhaodi e e dirang jaaka letlaleletsi. Letlhaolwa e nna leinatota, leinakgongwa, leinafelo, leemedi, modirisogo jj. (Krüger, 2013a:58). Sekao (5-39), mo polelwaneng e, **monna** ke letlhaolwa, fa tlhaodi e le **yo mogolo**, seo se tlhola setlhopha sa leina. Morley (2004:74-79) o tlhalosa fa setlhopha sa leina se na le tlhogo, letlaleletsi le tlhaodi.

(5-39) monna yo mogolo

mo-nna	yo	mo-golo
StlhLn1-modi	lesp	StlhLn1-modi

5.5.2 Setlhopha sa leemedi

Setlhopha sa leemedi ke setlhopha se se nang le leemedi le le dirang jaaka letlhaolwa kgotsa tlhogo le tlhaodi e le nngwe kgotsa go feta (Krüger, 2013b:93). Sekao (5-40) leemedi **rona** ke tlhogo ya setlhopha seo, fa **rotlhe** e le letlaleletsi. Letlhaolwa la leemedi e ka nna leemeditota, lesupi le matlhophi, mme mabotsi le matlhophitlhotlholodi a ka se dire tiro ya go nna tlhogo (Krüger 2006:93-106).

(5-40) rona rotlhe

rona	rotlhe
Lmtho	ltlhpak

5.5.3 Setlhopha sa lediri

Setlhopha sa lediri ke setlhopha se se nang le letiro le le dirang jaaka tlhogo ya setlhopha le sediri kana sedirwa kgotsa letlhalosi, Krüger (2013b:52-53). Mo sekaong (5-41) sediri le lediri di kopantswe ke thuanyisediri.

(5-41) Mosadi **o tlhatswa diaparo ka sesepa**.

Mo-sadi		o-tlhats-w-a		di-aparo
StlhLn1-modi		thysdr-modi-mgtrw-MgtlLed		StlhLn8-modi
ka	se-sepa			
Legtrs	StlhLn7-modi			

5.5.4 Setlhopha sa legokanyi

Setlhopha sa magokanyi ke setlhopha se se nang le letlapele le e leng legokanyi e be le salwa morago ke letlaleletsi, sk. (5-42). Setlhopha sa magokanyi se kgona go nna le magokanyirui, magokanyikamano, madirimabaa, madiri.

(5-42) o sega nama **ka thipa**

o-seg-a	(ne)-nama	ka	(ne)-thipa
Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn9-modi	legtrs	StlhLn9-modi

5.5.5 Setlhopha sa lekopanyi

Setlhopha sa makopanyi ke setlhopha se se nang le letlapele le letlaleletsi, Krüger (2013b:255). Letlapele le ke lekopanyi, mme letlaleletsi le ke lediri kgotsa setlhopha sa lediri, kgotsa setlhopha sa ledirilebaa kgotsa setlhopha sa lethusalediri. Mo sekaong (5-43) lekopanyi **fa-** ke letlapele le le salwang morago ke letlaleletsi **ba tsena** le e leng setlhopha sa lediri.

(5-43) **fa** ba tsena

fa	ba-tsen-a
Lekp	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed

5.6 DIKAPOLELWANA

Mo Setswaneng dikapolelwana di bopiwa ke tlhogo e e leng mofuta wa lefoko, mme tlhogo e e ka tsamaya e le nosi kgotsa e ka nna le letlaleletsi kgotsa tlhaodi go bopa sekapolelwana, Berg (2018:104). Pharologano magareng ga setlhopha sa mafoko le dikapolelwana ke gore sekapolelwana se kgona go nna lefoko le le lengwe le se na letlaleletsi, fa setlhopha sa mafoko

se bopiwa ke tlhogo kana letlhaolwa le letlaleletsi kana tlhaodi, Krüger (2013b:39-40). Sekapolelwana se bopilwe ke lefoko, kgotsa setlhopha sa mafoko. Mefuta ya mafoko le dikarolwana tsa one di kgona go dira jaaka tlhogo ya sekapolelwana, ka jalo mefuta yotlhe ya mafoko e bopa dikapolelwana mo Setswaneng. Mo Setswaneng re na le dikapolelwana tse di latelang;

- Sekapolelwana-leina (*Noun phrase*)
- Sekapolelwana-leemedi (*Pronoun phrase*)
- Sekapolelwana-lediri (*Verb phrase*)
- Sekapolelwana-legokanyi (*Particle phrase*)
- Sekapolelwana-letlhalosi (*Adverb phrase*)
- Sekapolelwana-tatlhelwa (*Interjection phrase*)
- Sekapolelwana-leetsi (*Ideophone phrase*)

5.6.1 Sekapolelwana-leina

Sekapolelwana-leina ke sekapolelwana se se bopilweng ke leina le le lengwe, kgotsa leina le tlhaodi, Letsholo le Matlhaku (2014:26-27). Leina le dira jaaka tlhogo, mme le setswe morago ke tlhaodi, sekao (5-44) go iponagatsa fa sekapolelwana se se na le leina **monna** le tlhaodi **yo** le e leng lesupi la kemo ya ntlha. Mafoko a a dirang jaaka tlhaodi e ka nna, maemeditota, masupi, matlhophi le mabotsi, Berg (2018:105-107).

(5-44) monna yo

mo-nna	yo
StlhLn1-modi	lesp

Mo karolong ya maina, go na le maina a kayang felo, ka jalo le one a bopa sekapolelwana se se rileng. Sekapolelwana se se bopiwa ke leina le le kayang felo le eme le le lengwe kgotsa le na le letlaleletsi. Sekao (5-45) polelwana e e bopilwe ke leinafelo **motseng** le lesupi **o**.

(5-45) mo motseng o

mo	mo-tse-ing	o
Legf	StlhLn3-modi-Mgf	lesp

5.6.2 Sekapolelwana-leemedi

Sekapolelwana-leemedi ke sekapolelwana se se bopilweng ke leemedi le le lengwe, kgotsa le bopilwe ke leemedi le letlaleletsi, Berg (2018:108-110). Mo sekaong (5-46) go ipontsha fa polelwana e e bopilwe ke leemeditota **tsone** le lesupi **tse**.

(5-46) tsone tse

tsone	tse
Lmdt	lesp

5.6.3 Sekapolelwana-lediri

Madiri ke mofuta wa lefoko o o nang le dikarolwana. Dikarolwana tse di bopa dipolelwana. Lediritota le na le popego ya lone go bopa sekapolelwana, fela jalo le dikarolwana tsa madiri, Berg (2018:117-120). Sekapolelwana-lediri e bopilwe ke Lediritota mo sekaong (5-47) sekapolelwana se se bonagala e le lediri, ka popego ya lediri e ikaegile ke tlhogo, modi le megatlana (lb. §4.4.3). Sekapolelwana se ga se tlhoke sediri ka thuanyisediri e emela sediri.

(5-47) ba a dira

ba-a-dir-a

Thysdrw-pypj-modi-MgtlLed

Madirimabaa le one a kgona go nna le dikapolelwana. Dikapolelwana tsa madirimabaa di bopilwe ke ditlhogo, sk. (5-48). Mo sekaong go ipontsha fa ledirilebaa la tshwantshanyo **ke** e le tlhogo mme e salwa morago ke letlaleletsi **motlhatlheledi**.

(5-48) Ke motlhatlheledi.

ke	mo-tlhatlheledi
Kytsh	StlhLn1-modi

Lethusalediri le bontsha le kgona go bopa sekapolelwana, mme popego ya sekapolelwana se se ikaegile ka lethusalediri e leng tlhogo ya polelwana, mme e na le letlaleletsi e leng lediritota. Mo sekaong (5-49) thuanyisediri le popi ya pakatlang **o tla** di setswe morago ke lediritota **reka**.

(5-49) o tla reka

o-tla-rek-a

Thysdr-pyptl-modi-MgtlLed

5.6.4 Sekapolelwana-legokanyi

Sekapolelwana-legokanyi ke sekapolelwana e e bopilweng ke legokanyi le dira jaaka tlhogo, mme e be le salwa morago ke letlaleletsi, Berg (2018:110-116). Mo dikapolelwaneng tse, go na le sekapolelwana-legokanyirui, sekapolelwana-legokanyitlhaodi, sekapolelwana-legokanyisediriswa, sekapolelwana-legokanyifelo, sekapolelwana-legokanyikamano, sekapolelwana-legokanyitshwantsho, sk. (5-50). Sekao se se bontsha e le sa sekapolelwana-legokanyirui e e bonalang ka **ya batho** e e leng sekapolelwana, mme **ya** e le legokanyirui, fa **batho** e le leina.

(5-50) koloi ya batho

(ne-)-koloi	ya	ba-tho
StlhLn9-modi	legrui	StlhLn2-modi

5.6.5 Sekapolelwana-letlhalosi

Sekapolelwana-letlhalosi ke sekapolelwana se se bopilweng ke letlhalosi fela, Berg (2018:116). Mo sekaong (5-51) jaaka go iponagatsa mo sekaong, letlhalosi **thata** le ikemetse le le lengwe e bile ga le na letlaleletsi.

(5-51) Ngwana o ja **thata**.

mo-ana	o-j-a	thata
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	ltlhls

5.6.6 Sekapolelwana-tatlhelwa

Sekapolelwana-tatlhelwa ke sekapolelwana se se bopilweng ka lelatlhelwa le le nosi, Berg, (2018:116-117), sk. (5-52).

(5-52) Heei!

heei
tatlhel

5.6.7 Sekapolelwana-leetsi

Sekapolelwana-leetsi ke sekapolelwana se se bopilweng ka leetsi le le nosi, Berg (2018:116-117), sk. (5-53).

(5-53) Ba re tuu!

ba-r-e	tuu
thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	Lts

5.7 POLELO

Polelo ke mafoko a a kopanang go bopa bokao jo bo feletseng, e ka nna lefoko le le ikemetseng, sk (5-54) kgotsa setlhopha sa mafoko. Cole (1955:57) o tlhalosa polelo e le mafoko kgotsa setlhopha sa mafoko se golagantswe go bopa kakanyo e e feletseng. Polelo e bopiwa fa ditlhopha tsa mafoko di golagantswe go tlhagisa dintlha, dipotso, ditaelo le matsibosi, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:197-198). Setshedi (1980:97) o tlhalosa polelo e le setlhopha sa mafoko a rulagantswe go neela kakanyo e e feletseng. Department of Linguistics and Literature, University of Botswana (2000:1-2) e kaela fa polelo e e tlwaelegileng mo Setswaneng e bopiwa ke sediri le letiro. Kgolagano ya mafoko e dumelesega ka ntlha ya melawana e e rileng ya thaepoloji (*typology*). Kosch (1991:102) o tlhalosa thaepoloji e le melawana e e laolang tatelano ya mafoko go bopa polelo e e feletseng mme e na le bokao jo bo feletseng. Ka jalo tatelano ya mafoko mo polelong ya Setswana e tla nna **sediri** se salwa morago ke **letiro,** go be go latela **sedirwa** (SLS), sk. (5-55) mo sekaong se, **modiri** ke sediri sa polelo, fa **o nwa** e le letiro mme **tee** e le sedirwa. Cole (1955:426) o kaela fa polelonolo mo Setswaneng e bopiwa ke tatelano ya Sediri-Letiro-Sedirwa (SLS). Louwrens *et al*. (1995:39) ba tlhalosa gore le mo puong ya Sepedi, tatelano ya polelonolo ke sediri, letiro le sedirwa.

(5-54) Taboga!

tabog-a
modi-MgtlLed

(5-55) Modiri o nwa tee.

mo-dir-i	o-nw-a	(ne-)-tee
StlhLn1-modi-leitr	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	StlhLn9-modi

Polelo e bopiwa ke fa mefuta ya mafoko le ditlhopha tsa mafoko di kopane go neela bokao kgotsa kakanyo e e feletseng. Popego ya dipolelo e laolwa ke melao ya popapolelo. Mefuta ya mafoko e e botlhokwa mo popegong ya dipolelo ke leina le le dirang jaaka sediri sa polelo, le lediri le le dirang jaaka letiro mo polelong, ka jalo polelo e e bonolo ke e e nang le sediri le letiro. Setshedi (1980:101) le Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:200) ba kaela fa go na le polelwanakutu, e e leng polelo e e ikemetseng ka boyona, le polelwanakala e e leng polelo e e ikaegileng ka polelwanakutu. Ba tswelela ka go kaela gore mefuta e ya dipolelo e bonala mo polelopateng. Go na le mefuta e le meraro ya dipolelo mo Setswaneng e bong;

- Polelonolo
- Polelopate
- Polelotswako

5.7.1 Polelonolo

Polelonolo ke polelo e e bopilweng ke sediri, letiro le sedirwa fa go tlhokega, e bile ke polelo e e ikemetseng e sa ikaega ka sepe. Polelonolo e e ka nna telele kgotsa ya nna khutshwane fa e sena dikatoloso, Setshedi (1980:97), sekao. (5-56). Polelonolo e ka nna le sediri le sedirwa, sk. (5-57). Polelonolo e bontsha e le polelwanakutu.

(5-56) Mosadi o gorogile.

mo-sadi	o-gorog-il-e
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-modi-pypph-MgtlLed

(5-57) Mosadi o gorogile le dijo.

mo-sadi	o-gorog-il-e	le
StlhLn1-modi	thysdr-modi-Mgtrd-pypph	Lgkny
di-j-o		
StlhLn7-modi-Mg		

Polelonolo ke polelo e e nang le lediri le le lengwe fela e bile e le khutshwane, Setshedi (1980:97). Polelo e e bopilwe ke letiro le le lengwe le le ikemetseng, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:199), ka jalo e tlhagelela mo medirisong e e ikemetseng e bong modirisopego, modirisotaelo, modirisotlwaelo, modirisotatelano, Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:93-105; 126-129).

5.7.2 Polelopate

Polelopate ke polelo e e bopilweng ka dipolelwana tse pedi kgotsa go feta, e bopilwe ke polelwanakutu, le polelo e e ikaegileng ka polelwanakutu eo, e bong polelwanakala, Setshedi (1980:101), sk. (5-58). Mo sekaong go bontsha fa dipolelo tse pedi di kopantswe ke lekopanyi **fa-** mme go supa fa polelo ya ntlha e e ntshofaditsweng e ikemetse mme ya bobedi e e thaletsweng e ikaegile ka ya ntlha.

(5-58) **Re tla tsamaya** *fa* letsatsi le phirima.

re-tla-tsamay-a	fa	le-tsatsi
Thysdr-pyptl-modi-Mgtlled	lekp	StlhLn5-modi
le phirim-a		
lekp modi-MgtlLed		

Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:200) ba tlhalosa fa polelopate e bopiwa ke letiro le le ikemetseng le letiro le le sa ikemelang, mme le le sa ikemelang le ikaegile ka la ntlha. Polelopate e farologana le polelotswako ka ntlha ya gore polelotswako e bopilwe ka dipolelo tse pedi tse di kgonang go ikemela ka botsona. Lediri le le mo polelwanakutu le tlhagelela mo modirisong o o ikemetseng, e bong modirisopego, modirisotaelong, modirisotlwaelo le modirisotatelano, Louwrens (1991:30). Louwrens (1994:28) o tlhalosa polelopate e le polelo e e nang le polelwanakutu le polelwanakala e le nngwe kgotsa go feta.

Polelwanakala ke polelo e e ikaegileng ka polelwanakutu kgotsa polelonolo ka ntlha ya gore bokao jwa yona bo sa tlhagelele sentle fa e ikemetse e le nosi, Setshedi (1980:101). Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:200-201) ba tlhalosa fa polelwanakala e le setlhopha sa mafoko se se bopilweng ke sediri le letiro le le sa ikemelang. Louwrens (1994:189-190) o tlhalosa fa polelwanakala e le polelo e e kopantsweng e bile e e ikaegileng ka polelwanakutu. Polelwanakala e tlhagelela mo medirisong e e sa ikemelang e bong modirisotlaleletsi, modirisogo le Modirisokeletso (Setshedi, 1980:76-80; Louwrens, 1994:139–140; Krüger, 2013b:111–128). Bakwadi ba, ba supa fa go na le mefuta e le meraro ya di polelwanakala go ya ka bokao ba tsona mo polelong, e bong:

- Polelwanakalakeletso
- Polelwanakalago
- Polelwanakalatlaleletsi

A. Polelwanakalakeletso

Polelwanakalakeletso ke polelwanakala e e golaganngwang le polelwanakutu gonne bokao jwa yona bo sa felela mme e le lediri le le sa kgoneng go ikemela ka bolona, Louwrens (1991:44). Mo sekaong (5-59) polelwanakalakeletso ke polelwana e e ntshofaditsweng, mme e ikaegile ka polelwanakutu. Lediri mo polelwanakala e le tlhagelela mo modirisokeletsong, gape e neela lebaka la go diragatsa tiro e e kailweng ke lediri, Louwrens (1994189-190). Dipolelo tse pedi tse di kopantswe ke lekopanyi **gore**. Setshedi (1980:102) o bitsa mokgwa o wa polelwana, polelwanakala-ina, mme o e tlhalosa le polelo e e sa ikemelang mme e itsewe ka lekopanyi **gore**.

(5-59) Ga re itse **gore o lelela eng?**

ga-re-its-e		gore	o-lelel-a
Pykg-thysdr-modi-MgtlLed		lekp	thysdrw-modi-MgtlLed
eng			
lebts			

B. Polelwanakalago

Polelwanakalago ke polelwanakala e e dirang tiro ya go tlhalosa se se kaiwang ke lediri la polelwanakutu, Krüger (2013b:126). Polelwanakala e e bonala fa morago ga polelwanakutu, mme e bonala ka tlhogo ya modirisogo **go-**, sk (5-60).

(5-60) Pule o kopa rre **go tshela** tee.

(-)-pule	o-kop-a		(-)-rre	
StlhLn1a-modi	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed		StlhLn1a-modi	
go-tshel-a		(ne)-tee		
tlhymdg-modi-MgtlLed		StlhLn9-modi		

C. Polelwanakalatlaleletsi

Polelwanakalatlaleletsi ke polelwanakala e e tlhalosang kgolagano le polelwanakutu, mme se se bontsha tiragalo e diregang ka nako e le nngwe kgotsa tiragalo nngwe e direga ka ntlha ya tiragalo e nngwe, Louwrens (1991:47). Mo sekaong (5-61) tiro mo polelwanakalatlaleletsi e iponagatsa e diragala ga mmogo tiro e e leng mo polelwanakutu. Mo sekaong (5-62) go ipontsha fa lediri mo polelwanakalatlaleletsi le direga fa go direga tiro e mo lediring la polelwanakutu pele, mme dipolelwana tse di golagantswe ke lekopanyi **fa-**.

(5-61) Ba tsamaya ba opela

ba-tsamay-a	ba-opel-a
Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	Thysdr-modi-MgtlLed

(5-62) Re tla ba bolelela fa **ba tla**

re-tla	ba-bolelel-a	fa
Thysdr-pyptl	thysdr-modi-MgtlLed	Lekp
ba-tl-a		
thysdr-modi-MgtlLed		

5.7.3 Polelotswako

Polelotswako ke polelo e e nang le dipolelwana di le pedi mme nngwe le nngwe ya tsona e kgona go ikemela ka boyona go se na e e ikaegileng ka e nngwe. Mo sekaong (5-63) go ipontsha go na le dipolelo tse pedi tse di ikemetseng kana tse e leng dipolelonolo, di tswakantswe ka lekopanyi go bopa polelo e le nngwe.

(5-63) **Re ka ba roma** gongwe **ba a tshepega**.

re-ka-ba-rom-a	gongwe
Thysdr-pykgn-thysdrw-modi-MgtlLed	lekp
ba-a-tshep-eg-a	
thysdrw-pypj-modi-Mgtrg-MgtlLed	

Setshedi (1980:101) o kaya fa polelotswako e le polelo e e bopilweng ke dipolelwana tse pedi kana go feta, mme dipolelo tseo di ikemetse ka botsona. O tswelela ka gore dipolelo tseo tse di ikemetseng di bidiwa di polelwanakutu, mme dipolelwanakutu tse di kopanngwa ke makopanyi. Snyman le Mothoagae (1990:200) ba tlhalosa polelotswako e le polelo e e bopiwang ke dipolelonolo tse pedi di kopantswe ke makopanyi. Louwrens (1994:29) o tlhalosa polelotswako e le mofuta wa polelo e e bopilweng ke polelwanakutu tse pedi tse di kopantsweng go bopa polelo e le nngwe e feletseng.

5.8 KONOSETSO

Maikaelelo a kgaolo e ne e le go tlhalosa mareo a a welang ka fa tlase ga lekala la popapolelo. Kgaolo e, e simolotse ka go neela tlhaloso e e tletseng ka ga popapolelo jaaka e le nngwe ya lekala la thutapuo, mme e neetse sekao se se maleba go tlhalosa se popapolelo e leng sona. Tshedimosetso ka ga mefuta ya mafoko e neetswe ka dikao, le go supa gore mefuta e ya mafoko e dira tiro efeng mo polelong. Kgaolo e e ne ya tswelela ka go tlhalosa mareo a a tiriso tsa mafoko, popego ya ditlhopha tsa mafoko le dipolelwana tsa mafoko. Mo bofelong go tlhalositswe lereo polelo le gore polelo e bopilwe jang. Mefuta ya dipolelo e tlhalositswe, mme mareo ‘polelwanakala’ le ‘polelwanakutu’ a tlhalositswe ka botlalo, a neelwa le dikao. Ditlhaloso tse di salana morago go ya mokgwa yo dithuto tsa popapolelo di tlhagelelang ka teng.

KGAOLO 6 KONOSETSO: DIPHITLHELELO LE SEABE

6.1 MATSENO

Maitlhomo a patlisiso e ne e le go sekaseka le go tlhalosa mareo a popegopuo a a leng mo dithutong tsa Setswana tsa SETM 111 go fitlha go SETM 321 mo NWU. Lereo ke lefoko le le dirisitsweng go neela tlhalosokgolo ya sengwe, ka jalo ke karolo e e botlhokwa ya puo, mme go tlhaloganya lereo ke motheo o o botlhokwa fa o simolola go ithuta puo kana popegopuo ya puo eo. Maikaelelo a kgaolo e ke go neela konosetso ya patlisiso e ka kakaretso. Se se tla tlhomamisa gore patlisiso eno e arabile dipotso tsa yona go ya ka maitlhomo a yona. Kgaolo e, e tla simolola ka go konosetsa diphitlhelelo tse di fitlheletsweng mo dikgaolong tsotlhe, le gore dikgaolo tse di arabile jang dipotso tsa patlisiso. Morago e tla tlhalosa seabe sa thuto e, le go neela le tiro e e ka diriwang go tswa mo thutong e.

6.2 DIPHITLHELELO

Go tswa mo setlhotlhomisweng sa patlisiso le dipotso tsa yona, go bonagetse fa mareo a thutapuo a tla tlhatlhobiwa mme a be a tlhalosiwa ka botlalo. Mareo a, a simolola go tlhalosiwa mo kgaolong ya boraro go fitlha mo kgaolong ya botlhano. Dikgaolo tse di arogantswe go ya ka makala a mararo a thutapuo e bong, thutamedumopuo le diphetogomedumo (lb § 3.1, 3.5), popafoko (lb § 4.1) le popapolelo (lb § 5.1) mme lekala lengwe le lengwe le tlhalositse mareo a a welang fa tlase lona. Go tla neelwa tshobokanyo ya dikgaolo e na le diphitlhelelo tse di bonweng mo dikgaolong tseo. Patlisiso e fitlheletse diphitlhelelo tse di latelang;

Mo kgaolong ya ntlha, go neetswe matsenomagolo a patlisiso, ka go neela lemorago la Setswana le le akareditseng lemorago la puo ya Setswana, lemorago la diphasalatswa tsa thutapuo ya Setswana le tlhotlheletso ya patlisiso. Kgaolo e e neetse tlhagiso ya setlhotlhomiswa, mme se se bontsha ka botlalo lemorago la patlisiso le bothata jo bo tlhotseng patlisiso. Go tswa mo setlhotlhomisweng go nnile le dipotso tse di tlhageletseng, mme morago ga moo maitlhomo a patlisiso a ne a tlhagelela go tswa mo dipotsong le botlhokwa jwa patlisiso eno bo ne ba tlhalosiwa ka botlalo.

Kgaolo ya bobedi e neetse ditshekatsheko ka diphasalatswa tsa thutapuo ya Setswana tse di nnileng teng. Diphasalatswa tse di fitlheletsweng mo dipakeng tsa thutapuo di neetswe, mme ga neelwa tshekatsheko ya diphasalatswa tse di dirisiwang kwa dikolong (lb § 2.2 – 2.3). Botlhokwa jwa se e ne e le go bona gore mareo a thutapuo a a dirisitsweng mo dikolong tse dipotlana a nepagetse e bile a tlhaloganyega. Morago, go ne go ne ga tlhagisiwa dikaedi tsa SETM tse di dirisiwang go ruta Setswana mo NWU, mokgwa wa se e ne e le go bontsha gore bothata jo bo

tlhotseng tlhotlheletso ya patlisiso bo tlholega go tswa kae. Mo bokhutlong jwa kgaolo go ne ga tlhagisiwa diphasalatswa tse di phasaladitsweng mo makaleng a thutapuo, mme go bonagetse diphasalatswa tse di kwadilweng ka Seesimane thata.

Mo kgaolong ya boraro mareo a a welang mo lekaleng la thutamedumopuo le diphetogomedumo a tlhalositswe ka botlalo le ka dikao. Kgaolo e e simolotse ka go tlhalosa gore thutamedumopuo ke eng, ya tswelela ka go tlhalosa dirwe tsa puo (lb § 3.2 – 3.3), mme e bontsha dikao tse di diriwang ke serwe sengwe le sengwe. Go bonala fa go na le mefuta e le meraro ya medumo, e bong ditumammogo, ditumanosi le dikatumanosi, mme mefuta e e na le diponagalo tsa yona, le mafelo a yona a tumiso (lb § 3.4). Mo tshekatshekong ya mareo a diphetogomedumo lereo kemofatso le ne le tlhoka go tlhalosiwa ka gore le ne tlhakatlhakanngwa le thatafatso (lb § 3.5.2). Setshedi le Malope (1978:33) ba ne ba tlhalosa fa kemofatso e tshwana le thatafatso kgotsa nkofatso. Thatafatso fa medumo e e seng thata, e fetoga go nna thata (Department of African Languages and Literature, University of Botswana, 2000:22), fa nkofatso e le medumo e e teng ditumanko, e fetoga go nna ditumanko. Ntleng le foo, mareo otlhe a tlhalositswe ka dikao, mme ga go mareo ape a a tlhabolotsweng kgotsa a fetotsweng ka a ne a tlhaloganyega.

Mo kgaolong ya bone go sekasekilwe mareo a a welang mo lekaleng la popafoko. Kgaolo e e simolotse ka go tlhalosa lereo la popafoko mme ya tswelela ka go neela ditlhaloso tsa dipopi tse di farologaneng tsa Setswana. Go bonala fa lereo *affix* e le setlhongwa, mme *prefix* e le tlhogo fa *suffix* e le mogatla. Modi o ipontsha e le *root* fa kutu e le *stem*. Mogatlana o o bonalang mo bofelong jwa lediri o ipontsha e le *ending* kgotsa *terminative*. Mo maineng mogatla wa nyenyefatso ke *dimunitive suffix*, fa mogatla wa felo e le *locative suffix* mme mogatlana wa go sedifatsa e le *argumentative suffix* (lb § 4.2.1). Go na le ditsela tse di farologaneng tsa go bopa mafoko a Setswana. A ka bopiwa ka mokgwa wa katoloso ya dipopi, a ka bopiwa go tswa mafokong kgotsa dikarolong dingwe tsa mafoko, ka go tswakanya dipopi kgotsa dikutu tsa mafoko, kgotsa ka go boeletswa (lb § 4.3). Kosch (2006:84-127) o tlhalosa fa go na le *inflection* e e leng mokgwa wa go tsenya ditlhongwa mo lefokong go fetola bokao, le *derivation* e e leng mokgwa wa go bopa lefoko go tswa mo le lengwe (lb § 4.3.1-4.3.2). Mareo a ne a sena diphetolelo tsa ona mo Setswaneng ka jalo a bopilwe e bong katoloso le mafokomatswa. Mareo a a bopilwe go ya la bokao jwa one.

Lereo *word categories* le ne la fetolelwa go nna ‘mefuta ya mafoko’ gonne e le mafoko a mefuta e e farologaneng, e e nang le tiriso e e farologaneng mo polelong (lb § 4.4). Lereo *polarity* ke lereo le le neng le se na selekani sa lona la Setswana, ntle le fa o le fetolela go nna ‘kganetso’, fela phetolelo e ga e a nepagala mo go kgotsofatsang (lb § 4.4.3.5), ka jalo lereo le le theilwe Phapaano mo Setswaneng. Bokao jwa lefoko le le kaya gore lediri le kgona go tlhagelela mo

tumelong kgotsa mo kganetsong, Louwrens (1994:2). Go tloga mo go neetswe ditlhaloso ka mefuta ya mafoko e e fitlhelwang mo Setswaneng ka dikao tse di maleba.

Mo kgaolong ya botlhano mareo a a welang mofa tlase ga lekala la popapolelo a sekasekilwe. Kgaolo e e simolotse ka go tlhalosa ka boripana lereo popapolelo, mme ya tswelela ka go tlhalosa mefuta ya mafoko a Setswana. Mareo a 'letlhaodi, tlhaodi le modirisotlhaodi' a itshupa e le mareo a a tlholang ketsaetsego mo baithuting. Ka jalo a tlhalositswe mo kgaolong e, letlhaodi ke lefoko (lb § 4.4.1.3), fa tlhaodi e le tiro e e dirwang ke lefoko mo polelong (lb § 5.4.4). Modirisotlhaodi ke modiriso o o kayang gore letiro le tlhaola leina, mme letiro leo ke letlaleletsi la legokanyitiriso (lb § 5.3.1.4 G). Letlhalosi ke lefoko (lb § 4.4.4), fa tlhalosi e le tiro e lefoko le e dirang mo polelong (lb § 5.4.5). Lereo *antecedent* ke lereo le le tlhaolwang mo polelong, ka jalo lereo 'letlhaolwa' le bopilwe go kaya lereo le mo Setswaneng (lb § 5.4.3). Pharologano magareng ga mafoko le tiriso ya ona e neilwe ka botlalo (lb § 5.3-5.4). Mo kgaolong e go weditswe ka go neela ditlhaloso tsa ditlhopha tsa mafoko, dikapolelwana le mefuta ya dipolelo tsa Setswana.

6.3 SEABE SA PATLISISO

Seabe se segolo sa patlisiso e, ke go thusa baithuti go tlhaloganya mareo a thutapuo a a dirisitsweng mo dithutong tsa bone tsa Setswana. Ka jalo, maikaelelomagolo a patlisiso e a kaelwa e le;

- Go neela baithuti motheo wa go ithuta thutapuo ya Setswana, ka go tlhaloganya mareo a a akareditsweng mo dithutong tsa bona.
- Go bopa motlhala wa go nna le metswedi ya thutapuo mo Setswaneng, thata dithanodi tsa mareo a thutapuo.
- Go tlisa tshedimosetso le go nna motswedi o mošwa ka thutapuo ya Setswana.

6.4 TIRO YA ISAGO

Patlisiso e e butse tsela ya go amogela diphasalatswa di le mmalwa tsa thutapuo ya Setswana tse di ka dirwang. Go ka kwalwa mme ga oketswa diphasalatswa tsa dithanodi tsa mareo a thutapuo ya Setswana ka kakaretso. Go ka phasalatswa metswedi ya dithuto tsa thutapuo ya Setswana di kwadilwe ka Setswana, mme se se tla thusa le go tlhabolola dikaedi tsa dithuto tsa Setswana mo NWU ka e ne e le maitlhomo a patlisiso e.

ANNEXURE A: TLALELETSO YA MAREO/MAFOKO A A DIRISITSWENG A THUTAPUO LE DILEKANI TSA ONA TSA SEESIMANE

Bokao	Semantics
Dipaka tsa Thutapuo	Linguistic periods
Dipotso tsa Patlisiso	Research questions
Dithanodi	Dictionaries
Dithuto tsa bosenadikerii	Undergraduate
Lefoko la mokwalo	Orthographic word
Lefoko la thutapuo	Linguistic word
Maitlhomo	Aims
Mmeo	Methodology
Paka ya Lekgorokgoro	Traditional period
Paka ya Popego	Structural period
Paka ya Segompieno	Modern period
Paka ya Tiriso	Functional period
Popegopuo	Grammar
Thutapuo	Linguistics
Tlhagiso ya Setlhotlhomiswa	Problem statement

Mareo a thutamedumopuo le diphetogomedumo

Bolengtumiso jwa ditumammogo	Articulation of consonants
Bolengtumiso jwa ditumanosi	Articulation of vowels
Diphetogomedumo	Phonology
Diponagalo tsa ditumammogo	Features of consonants
Kemofatso	Occlusivation
Kgalapatso	Palatalisation
Kgwasafatso	Velarisation
Mafelo a tumiso a ditumanosi	Places of articulation of consonants
Mefuta ya medumopuo	Speech sounds
Papetlana ya ditumanosi	Vowel chart
Poufatso	Labialisation
Rinifatso	Alveolarisation
Sekatumanosi	Semi-vowel
Serwe sa puo	Speech organ
Tengwafatso	Velarisation

Thutamedumopuo	Phonetics
Tlogelo ya ditumanosi	Elision of vowels
Tshwaetsano ya ditumanosi	Vowel assimilation
Tshwaetsano	Assimilation
Tumagalapa	Palatal sound
Tumagalapapele	Palato-alveolar
Tumagwasa	Fricative
Tumakemo	Stop sound
Tumakgokgotso	Glottal sound
Tumakgwasa	Affricative
Tumammogo	Consonant
Tumanosi	Vowel
Tumapou	Bilabial sound
Tumapoungathi	Labio-dental sound
Tumarinini	Alveolar sound
Tumatengwa	Velar sound
Tumateteselo	Trill
Tumathunya	Plosive
Tumatlhokamogwasa	Resonant
Tumatsweledi	Continuent

Mareo a popafoko

Dikarolwana tsa madiri	Sub-categories of the verb
Ditlhogo tsa madiri	Prefixes of the verb
Ditlhopha tsa maina	Noun class prefixes
Katoloso	Inflection
Kutu	Stem
Leadingwa/Lethopiwa	Adoptive
Lediri	Verb
Lediriletswa	Denominative
Leemedi	Pronoun
Leemedirui/Leemedithuo	Possessive pronoun
Leemeditota	Absolute pronoun
Leetsi	Ideophone
Legokanyi	Particle

Legokanyifelo	Locative particle
Legokanyikamano	Associative particle
Legokanyipotso	Interrogative particle
Legokanyirui	Possessive particle
Legokanyitirisi	Instrumental particle
Legokanyitlhaodi	Qualificative particle
Legokanyitshwantsho	Comparative particle
Leinaletswa	Deverbative
Leinatswako	Compound noun
Lekopanyi	Conjunction
Lelatlhelwa/Tatlhelwa	Interjection
Lesupi	Demonstrative pronoun
Letlhalosi	Adverb
Letlhaodi	Adjective
Letlhophi	Quantitative pronoun
Mafokomatswa	Derivation
Mefuta ya dipopi	Types of morphemes
Mefuta ya Maemedi	Types of pronouns
Mefuta ya mafoko/ Dikarolopuo	Word categories/parts of speech
Mefuta ya maina	Types of nouns
Modi	Root
Modiriso	Mood
Mogatla tiraki	Extensive suffix
Mogatla tirani	Reflexive suffix
Mogatla tiredi	Applicative suffix
Mogatla tiregi-tirwa	Neuter passive suffix
Mogatla tirisi	Causative suffix
Mogatla tirolodi	Reversive transive suffix
Mogatla tirwa	Passive suffix
Mogatla tlhongwa lediri	Denominative suffix
Mogatla wa pakapheti	Perfect suffix
Mogatla	Suffix
Mogatlana	Terminative/Ending
Mokgwatiro	Aspect
Paka	Tense
Phapaano	Polarity/ Actuality

Poeletso	Reduplication
Popafoko	Morphology
Popi	Morpheme
Popo ya mafoko	Word Formation
Setlhongwa	Affix
Tlhogo	Prefix
Tswakanyo	Compounding

Mareo a popapolelo

Ditlhopha tsa mafoko	Word gorups
Lediri	Verb
Ledirilebaa	Copulative verb
Leemedi	Pronoun
Leetsi	Ideophone
Legokanyi	Particle
Leina	Noun
Lekopanyi	Conjunction
Lelatlhelwa	Interjection
Lethusalediri	Auxiliary verb
Letiro	Predicate
Letlaleletsi	Complement
Letlapele	Introductory member
Letlhalosi	Adverb
Letlhaodi	Adjective
Letlhaolwa	Antecedent
Mefuta ya mafoko	Word categories, word classes, parts of speech, lexical categories
Modiriso	Mood
Modirisogo	Infinitive mood
Modirisokeletso	Subjunctive mood
Modirisopego	Indicative mood
Modirisotaelo	Imperative mood
Modirisotatelano	Consecutive mood
Modirisotlaleletsi	Participial mood
Modirisotlhaodi	Relative mood

Modirisotlwaelo	Habitual mood
Mokgwatiro	Aspect
Paka	Tense
Phapaano	Polarity
Polelo	Sentence
Polelonolo	Simple sentence
Polelopate	Complex sentence
Polelotswako	Compound sentence
Polelwanakala	Subordinate Clause
Polelwanakalago	Infinitive surbodinate clause
Polelwanakalakeletso	Subjunctive surbodinate clause
Polelwanakalatlaleletsi	Participial surbordinate clause
Polelwanakutu	Main Clause
Popapolelo	Syntax
Sediri sa bokao	Semantic subject
Sediri sa popegopuo	Grammatical subject
Sediri	Subject
Sedirwa	Object
Sedirwatebang	Direct object
Sedirwathoko	Indirect object
Sekapolelwana	Phrase
Sekapolelwana-lediri	Verb phrase
Sekapolelwana-leemedi	Pronoun phrase
Sekapolelwana-leetsi	Ideophone phrase
Sekapolelwana-legokanyi	Particle phrase
Sekapolelwana-leina	Noun phrase
Sekapolelwana-letlhalosi	Adverb phrase
Sekapolelwana-tatlhelwa	Interjection phrase
Setlhopha sa lediri	Verbal group
Setlhopha sa leemedi	Pronoun group
Setlhopha sa legokanyi	Particle group
Setlhopha sa leina	Noun group
Setlhopha sa lekopanyi	Conjunction group
Tiriso ya mafoko	Functional classes
Tlhalosi	Descriptive
Tlhaodi	Qualificative/modifier

METSWEDI

Bennet, W. Diemer, M., Kerford, J., Probert, T. & Wesi, T. 2016. Setswana (South Africa). *Journal of the International Phonetic Association*, 46(2): 235-245.

Berg, A.S. 2018. Computational syntactic analysis of Setswana. Potchefstroom: North-West University. (Thesis – PhD).

Cole, D.T. 1955. An Introduction to Tswana Grammar. Cape Town: Longman.

Criessels, D. 2019. Morphology in Niger-Congo languages. https://doi.org/10.1093/acrefore/9780199384655.013.535.

Crystal, D. 1991. A dictionary of linguistics and phonetics. Oxford: Basil Blackwell.

Dalrymple, M. 2001. Lexical Functional Grammar. Syntax and Semantics, Volume 34. California: Academic Press.

Department of African Languages and Literature, Botswana University. 2000. The structure of Setswana sentences. Gaborone: Lightbooks.

Jurafsky, D. & Martin, J.H. 2024. Speech and sound processing: An Introduction to Natural Language Processing, Computational Linguistics, and Speech Recognition with Language Models. https://web.stanford.edu/~jurafsky/slp3/ed3bookaug20_2024.pdf.

Katamba, F. 1989. An introduction to phonology. London: Longman.

Katamba, F. 1993. Morphology. In modern linguistic series. University of Essex: The Macmillan Press LTC.

Khumalo, L. 2023. Developing computational resources for the re-intellectualization of African languages. Paper delivered at the 1st BAALA conference, NWU, Vanderbiljpark.

Kosch, I.M. 1991. A survey Of Northern Sotho Grammatical description. Pretoria: UNISA. (Thesis - PhD).

Kosch, I.M. 2006. Topics in morphology in the African language context. Pretoria: UNISA.

Krüger C.J.H. & Snyman J.W. 1986: The Sound System of Setswana. Goodwood: . Via Afrika Limited

Krüger, C.J.H. 2006. Introduction to the morphology of Setswana. München: Lincom Europe.

Krüger, C.J.H. 2013a. Setswana syntax: a survey of word group structures: Volume 1. München: Lincom Europe.

Krüger, C.J.H. 2013b. Setswana syntax: a survey of word group structures: Volume 2. München: Lincom Europe.

Language Policy of the NWU. 2022. https://www.nwu.ac.za/sites/www.nwu.ac.za/files/files/i-governance-management/policy/2022/LanguagePolicy/2P_2.5_2022_e1.pdf. Date of access: 10 Mar. 2023.

Legodi, D.W. Ramushu, J M., Mphahlele, M.C.J. 1981. Ithute popopolelo. Pietermarizburg: Shutter & Shutter.

Letsholo, R. & Matlhaku, K. 2014. The syntax of the Setswana noun phrase. Marang: Journal of Language and Literature, 24:22–41.

Lombard, D., Van Wyk, E. B. & Mokgokong, P. C. 1985. Introduction to the grammar of Northern Sotho. Pretoria: Van Schaik.

Louwrens, L. J., Kosch, I.M., Kotze, A.E. 1995. Northern Sotho. München: Lincom Europe.

Louwrens, L.J. 1991. Aspects of Northern Sotho Grammar. Pretoria: Via Afrika.

Louwrens, L.J. 1994. Dictionary of Northern Sotho grammatical terms. Pretoria: Via Afrika.

Louwrens. L.J., Kosch, I.M. & Kotzé, A.E. 1995. Northern Sotho. München: Lincom Europe.

Machobane. M.E. 2010 Thutopolelo ea Sesotho. Cape Town: Printing solutions

Moleboa, M.K. 2013. Malepa a puo. Pretoria: Century-Turn book publishers.

Mirarchi, D., Vizza, P. Tradigo, G. Lombardo, N. Arabia, G. & Veltri, P. 2018. Signal Analysis for Voice Evaluation in Parkinson's Disease. Paper delivered at the IEEE International Conference on Health Care Informatics (ICHI).

Mokakale, O.J. & Moatlhodi, P. 2008. Thanodi ya Setswana. 1st ed. Setswana National Lexicography Unit.

Morley, D.J. 2004. Explorations in functional Syntax: A new framework for lexicogrammatical analysis. United Kingdom: Equinox Publishing Ltd

Moyane, L.H. 1995. Grammatical description in Setswana: an overview. Johannesburg: Rand Afrikaans University. (Dissertation- MA).

Otlogetswe, T.J. 2012. Tlhalosi ya medi ya Setswana. Gaborone: Medi Publishing.

Phakedi, M. 2019. Popegopuo ya Setswana le tshekatsheko ya terama. Potchefstroom: North-West University. (Study guide, SETM321 TC).

Phakedi, S.S.B. & Tsheole, O.J. 2018. Fonoloji ya Setswana le tshekatsheko ya porosa. Potchefstroom: North-West University. (Study guide, SETM221 TC).

Posthumus, L.C. 1994. Word-based versus root-based morphology in African Languages. South African Journal for African Languages, 14(1):28–36.

Poulos, G. & Louwrens, L.J. 1994. A linguistic analysis of Northern Sotho. Pretoria: Via Afrika.

Pretorius, R.S. 2014. The sequence and productivity of Setswana verbal suffixes. Stellenbosch Papers in Linguistics Plus, 44:1–23.

Richards, J.C., Platt, J. & Platt, H. 1992. Longman dictionary of language teaching and applied linguistics. 2nd ed. Essex: Clays Ltd.

Robins, R.H. 1964. General linguistics: An introductory survey. London: Longman.

Rose, S., Beaudoin-Lietz, C. & Nurse, D. 2002. A glossary of terms for bantu verbal categories:with special emphasis on tense and aspect. Munchen: Lincom Europa

Sandilands, A. 1953. Introduction to Setswana. Tigerkloof: London Missionary Society.)

Setshedi, J.E. 1980. Ithuteng Setswana. Ditlhopha tsa 8, 9 tsa borutabana. Mmabatho: Craft Press.

Setshedi, J.E. & Malope, R.M. 1982. Thutamedumopuo ya Setswana (fonoloji).

Snyman J.W. & Sebate, P.M. 1990. Segarona sa borutabana: fonetiki le diphetogomodumo. Cape Town: Varia

Snyman, J.W. & Mothoagae, M.K. 1990. Segarona sa Borutabana: Thutapuo. Cape Town: Educum Publishers.

Snyman, J.W. 1989. An Introduction to Tswana Phonetics. Hout Bay: Marius Lubbe Publishers.

Theledi, K.M.A. & Phakedi, M. 2019. Hisetori ya mokwalo wa Setswana le magonego a tlhaeletsano. Potchefstroom: North-West University. (Study guide, SETM111 TC).

Theledi, K.M.A., Pooe, E. & Phakedi, M. 2019. Popapolelo ya Setswana le poko. Potchefstroom: North-West University. (Study guide, SETM311 TC).

Theledi, K.M.A., Tsheole, O.J. & Phakedi, M. 2018. Matseno a thutapuo le ditlhangwa tsa setso. Potchefstroom: North-West University. (Study guide, SETM121 TC).

Theledi. K.M.A., Tsheole, O.J. & Phakedi, SSB. 2018. Fonetiki le ditlhangwa tsa sešweng. Potchefstroom: North-West University. (Study guide, SETM211 TC).

Tsheole, O.J. & Phakedi, SSB. 2015. Fonetiki ya Setswana le ditlhangwa tsa sešweng. Potchefstroom: North-West University. (Study guide, SETM211 TC).

University of Botswana. 2000. The sound system of Setswana. Department of African Languages and Literature. Botswana: Gaborone.

Van Wyk, E.B. 1966. The word classes of Northern Sotho. *Lingua*, 17(2): 230-261.

Watters, J. 2000. Syntax. (In Heine, B and Nurse, D., eds. African languages: an introduction. Cambridge: Cambridge University. p.194–230).

Wilkes, A. 1978. Bantu Language Studies. In Lanham L.W. & Prinsloo, K.P. eds.

Wolff, H.E. 2021. A history of African linguistics. New York: Cambridge University Press.

Ziervogel, D. 1977. Tswana I guide 2: Department of African Languages. Pretoria: UNISA.